

# Package: phylotaR (via r-universe)

August 18, 2024

**Type** Package

**Title** Automated Phylogenetic Sequence Cluster Identification from 'GenBank'

**Version** 1.3.0

**Description** A pipeline for the identification, within taxonomic groups, of orthologous sequence clusters from 'GenBank' <<https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/genbank/>> as the first step in a phylogenetic analysis. The pipeline depends on a local alignment search tool and is, therefore, not dependent on differences in gene naming conventions and naming errors.

**License** MIT + file LICENSE

**URL** <https://docs.ropensci.org/phylotaR/>,  
<https://github.com/ropensci/phylotaR#readme>

**BugReports** <https://github.com/ropensci/phylotaR/issues>

**Depends** methods, R (>= 3.5.0)

**Imports** ape, bigmemory, ggplot2, igraph, plyr, R.utils, rentrez, restez (>= 2.1.0), RJSONIO, stringr, sys, treemapify, XML

**Suggests** knitr, rmarkdown, testthat

**VignetteBuilder** knitr

**Encoding** UTF-8

**RoxygenNote** 7.2.3

**SystemRequirements** BLAST+ (>=2.0)

**X-schema.org-isPartOf** <https://ropensci.org>

**Repository** <https://phylotastic.r-universe.dev>

**RemoteUrl** <https://github.com/ropensci/phylotaR>

**RemoteRef** HEAD

**RemoteSha** 0495c37ed0a21878193ee1080a108d9ce8cbf74d

## Contents

addClade . . . . .	6
addNdmtrx . . . . .	7
addTip . . . . .	8
aotus . . . . .	9
batcher . . . . .	9
birds . . . . .	10
blastcache_load . . . . .	10
blastcache_save . . . . .	11
blastdb_gen . . . . .	12
blastn_run . . . . .	13
blast_clstr . . . . .	13
blast_filter . . . . .	14
blast_setup . . . . .	15
blast_sqz . . . . .	16
blncdTree . . . . .	17
bromeliads . . . . .	18
cache_rm . . . . .	18
cache_setup . . . . .	19
calcDstBLD . . . . .	19
calcDstMtrx . . . . .	20
calcDstRF . . . . .	21
calcDstTrp . . . . .	22
calcFrPrp . . . . .	23
calcNdBlnc . . . . .	24
calcNdsBlnc . . . . .	24
calcOvrlp . . . . .	25
calcPhyDv . . . . .	26
calcPrtFrPrp . . . . .	27
calc_mad . . . . .	28
calc_wrdfrq . . . . .	29
checkNdlst . . . . .	30
checkTreeMen . . . . .	31
clade_select . . . . .	31
clstr2_calc . . . . .	32
ClstrArc-class . . . . .	33
clstrarc_gen . . . . .	34
clstrarc_join . . . . .	35
ClstrRec-class . . . . .	36
clstrec_gen . . . . .	37
clstrs_calc . . . . .	38
clstrs_join . . . . .	39
clstrs_merge . . . . .	40
clstrs_renumber . . . . .	40
clstrs_save . . . . .	41
clstr_all . . . . .	42
clstr_direct . . . . .	43

clstr_sq	44
clstr_subtree	44
clusters2_run	45
clusters_run	46
cmdln	47
cTrees	48
cycads	49
descendants_get	49
download_obj_check	50
download_run	51
dragonflies	51
drop_by_rank	52
drop_clstrs	53
drop_sq	54
error	55
fastCheckTreeMan	56
gb_extract	56
getAge	57
getBiprts	58
getCnnctdNds	59
getDcsd	59
getLvng	60
getNdAge	61
getNdKids	61
getNdLng	62
getNdPD	63
getNdPrdst	63
getNdPrids	64
getNdPtids	65
getNdsAge	65
getNdsFrmTxnmys	66
getNdsKids	67
getNdsLng	67
getNdSlt	68
getNdsPD	69
getNdsPrdst	70
getNdsPrids	70
getNdsPtids	71
getNdsSlt	72
getNdsSstr	73
getNdSstr	73
getOtgrp	74
getPath	75
getPrnt	75
getSpnAge	76
getSpnsAge	77
getSubtree	77
getUnqNds	78

get_clstr_slot . . . . .	79
get_nsqs . . . . .	79
get_ntaxa . . . . .	80
get_sq_slot . . . . .	81
get_stage_times . . . . .	82
get_txids . . . . .	83
get_tx_slot . . . . .	84
hierarchic_download . . . . .	85
info . . . . .	86
isUltrmtrc . . . . .	86
is_txid_in_clstr . . . . .	87
is_txid_in_sq . . . . .	88
list-to-TreeMen . . . . .	89
list_clstrrec_slots . . . . .	89
list_ncbi_ranks . . . . .	90
list_seqrec_slots . . . . .	90
list_taxrec_slots . . . . .	91
loadTreeMan . . . . .	91
mammals . . . . .	92
mk_txid_in_sq_mtx . . . . .	92
multiPhylo-class . . . . .	93
multiPhylo-to-TreeMen . . . . .	93
ncbocache_load . . . . .	94
ncbocache_save . . . . .	94
Node-class . . . . .	95
obj_check . . . . .	96
obj_load . . . . .	97
obj_save . . . . .	98
outfmt_get . . . . .	99
parameters . . . . .	99
parameters_load . . . . .	101
parameters_reset . . . . .	102
parameters_setup . . . . .	103
parent_get . . . . .	104
phylo-class . . . . .	104
phylo-to-TreeMan . . . . .	105
Phylota-class . . . . .	105
pinTips . . . . .	107
plants . . . . .	108
plot_phylota_pa . . . . .	108
plot_phylota_treemap . . . . .	109
progress_init . . . . .	111
progress_read . . . . .	111
progress_reset . . . . .	112
progress_save . . . . .	113
pstMnp . . . . .	114
randTree . . . . .	114
rank_get . . . . .	115

rawseqrec_breakdown	116
readTree	117
readTrmn	118
read_phylota	119
reset	119
restart	120
rmClade	121
rmNdmtrx	122
rmNodes	123
rmOtherSlt	123
rmTips	124
run	125
safely_connect	126
saveTreeMan	127
searchterm_gen	128
searchTxnynms	129
search_and_cache	130
seeds_blast	131
SeqArc-class	131
seqarc_gen	133
SeqRec-class	134
seqrec_augment	136
seqrec_convert	137
seqrec_gen	137
seqrec_get	139
seq_download	140
setAge	141
setNdID	141
setNdOther	142
setNdsID	143
setNdsOther	144
setNdSpn	145
setNdsSpn	145
setPD	146
setTxnynms	147
setup	148
sids_check	149
sids_get	150
sids_load	151
sids_save	152
sq_count	153
sq_save	154
stages_run	155
stage_args_check	155
sturgeons	156
summary_phylota	157
tardigrades	157
taxaResolve	158

TaxDict-class . . . . .	159
taxdict_gen . . . . .	160
taxise_run . . . . .	161
TaxRec-class . . . . .	162
taxtree_gen . . . . .	163
tax_download . . . . .	164
tinamous . . . . .	165
TreeMan-class . . . . .	165
TreeMan-to-phylo . . . . .	167
TreeMen-class . . . . .	168
TreeMen-to-multiPhylo . . . . .	169
twoer . . . . .	169
txids_get . . . . .	170
txnds_count . . . . .	171
ultrTree . . . . .	171
unblncdTree . . . . .	172
updateSlts . . . . .	173
update_phylota . . . . .	173
warn . . . . .	174
writeTree . . . . .	174
writeTrmn . . . . .	176
write_sqs . . . . .	176
yeasts . . . . .	177

## Index 178

---

addClade	<i>Add clade to tree</i>
----------	--------------------------

---

### Description

Returns a tree with added clade

### Usage

```
addClade(tree, id, clade)
```

### Arguments

tree	TreeMan object
id	tip/node ID in tree to which the clade will be added
clade	TreeMan object

### Details

Add a TreeMan object to an existing TreeMan object by specifying an ID at which to attach. If the id specified is an internal node, then the original clade descending from that node will be replaced. Before running, ensure no IDs are shared between the tree and the clade, except for the IDs in the clade of that tree that will be replaced. Note, returned tree will not have a node matrix.

**See Also**

[rmClade](#), [getSubtree](#), <https://github.com/DomBennett/treeman/wiki/manip-methods>

**Examples**

```
t1 <- randTree(100)
# extract a clade
cld <- getSubtree(t1, "n2")
# remove the same clade
t2 <- rmClade(t1, "n2")
# add the clade again
t3 <- addClade(t2, "n2", cld)
# t1 and t3 should be the same
# note there is no need to remove a clade before adding
t3 <- addClade(t1, "n2", cld) # same tree
```

---

addNdmtrx

*Add node matrix to a tree*

---

**Description**

Return tree with node matrix added.

**Usage**

```
addNdmtrx(tree, shared = FALSE, ...)
```

**Arguments**

tree	TreeMan object
shared	T/F, should the bigmatrix be shared? See bigmemory documentation.
...	as.big.matrix() additional arguments

**Details**

The node matrix makes 'enquiry'-type computations faster: determining node ages, number of descendants etc. But it takes up large amounts of memory and has no impact on adding or removing tips. Note, trees with the node matrix can not be written to disk using the 'serialization format' i.e. with save or saveRDS. The matrix is generated with bigmemory's 'as.big.matrix()'.

**See Also**

[updateSlts](#), [rmNdmtrx](#), <https://cran.r-project.org/package=bigmemory>

**Examples**

```
#
tree <- randTree(10, wndmtrx = FALSE)
summary(tree)
tree <- addNdmtrx(tree)
summary(tree)
```

---

addTip	<i>Add tip to a tree</i>
--------	--------------------------

---

**Description**

Returns a tree with a new tip ID added

**Usage**

```
addTip(
  tree,
  tid,
  sid,
  strt_age = NULL,
  end_age = 0,
  tree_age = NULL,
  pid = paste0("p_", tid)
)
```

**Arguments**

tree	TreeMan object
tid	tip ID
sid	ID of node that will become new tip sisters
strt_age	timepoint at which new tips first appear in the tree
end_age	timepoint at which new tips end appear in the tree, default 0.
tree_age	age of tree
pid	parent ID (default is 'p_' + tid)

**Details**

User must provide new tip ID, the ID of the node which will become the new tip's sister, and new branch lengths. The tip ID must only contain letters numbers and underscores. Optionally, user can specify the IDs for the new parental internal nodes. Ensure that the `strt_age` is greater than the `end_age`, and that the `strt_age` falls within the age span of the sister ID. Otherwise, negative spns may be produced leading to an error. Note, returned tree will not have a node matrix. Note, providing negative end ages will increase the age of the tree.



**See Also**

[rmTips](https://github.com/DomBennett/treeman/wiki/manip-methods), <https://github.com/DomBennett/treeman/wiki/manip-methods>

**Examples**

```
tree <- randTree(10)
tree_age <- getAge(tree)
possible_ages <- getSpnAge(tree, "t1", tree_age)
start_age <- runif(1, possible_ages[["end"]], possible_ages[["start"]])
end_age <- possible_ages[["end"]]
tree <- addTip(tree,
  tid = "t11", sid = "t1", strt_age = start_age,
  end_age = end_age, tree_age = tree_age
)
summary(tree)
```

---

aotus

*aotus*


---

**Description**

aotus

**Format**

A TreeMan or Phylota object

**Examples**

```
data("aotus")
```

---

batcher

*Download in batches*


---

**Description**

Run downloader function in batches for sequences or taxonomic records

**Usage**

```
batcher(ids, func, ps, lvl = 0)
```

**Arguments**

ids	Vector of record ids
func	Downloader function
ps	Parameters list, generated with parameters()
lvl	Integer, number of message indentations indicating code depth.

**Value**

Vector of records  
vector of rentrez function results

**See Also**

Other run-private: [blast\\_clstr\(\)](#), [blast\\_filter\(\)](#), [blast\\_setup\(\)](#), [blast\\_sqs\(\)](#), [blastcache\\_load\(\)](#), [blastcache\\_save\(\)](#), [blastdb\\_gen\(\)](#), [blastn\\_run\(\)](#), [cache\\_rm\(\)](#), [cache\\_setup\(\)](#), [clade\\_select\(\)](#), [clstr2\\_calc\(\)](#), [clstr\\_all\(\)](#), [clstr\\_direct\(\)](#), [clstr\\_sqs\(\)](#), [clstr\\_subtree\(\)](#), [clstrarc\\_gen\(\)](#), [clstrarc\\_join\(\)](#), [clstrrec\\_gen\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_calc\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_join\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_merge\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_renumber\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_save\(\)](#), [cmdln\(\)](#), [descendants\\_get\(\)](#), [download\\_obj\\_check\(\)](#), [error\(\)](#), [gb\\_extract\(\)](#), [hierarchic\\_download\(\)](#), [info\(\)](#), [ncbocache\\_load\(\)](#), [ncbocache\\_save\(\)](#), [obj\\_check\(\)](#), [obj\\_load\(\)](#), [obj\\_save\(\)](#), [outfmt\\_get\(\)](#), [parameters\\_load\(\)](#), [parameters\\_setup\(\)](#), [parent\\_get\(\)](#), [progress\\_init\(\)](#), [progress\\_read\(\)](#), [progress\\_reset\(\)](#), [progress\\_save\(\)](#), [rank\\_get\(\)](#), [rawseqrec\\_breakdown\(\)](#), [safely\\_connect\(\)](#), [search\\_and\\_cache\(\)](#), [searchterm\\_gen\(\)](#), [seeds\\_blast\(\)](#), [seq\\_download\(\)](#), [seqarc\\_gen\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_augment\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_convert\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_gen\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_get\(\)](#), [sids\\_check\(\)](#), [sids\\_get\(\)](#), [sids\\_load\(\)](#), [sids\\_save\(\)](#), [sqs\\_count\(\)](#), [sqs\\_save\(\)](#), [stage\\_args\\_check\(\)](#), [stages\\_run\(\)](#), [tax\\_download\(\)](#), [taxdict\\_gen\(\)](#), [taxtree\\_gen\(\)](#), [txids\\_get\(\)](#), [txnds\\_count\(\)](#), [warn\(\)](#)

---

birds

*birds*


---

**Description**

birds

**Format**

A TreeMan or Phylota object

**Examples**

```
data("birds")
```

---

blastcache\_load

*Load BLAST results from cache*


---

**Description**

Run to load cached BLAST results.

**Usage**

```
blastcache_load(sids, wd)
```

**Arguments**

sids	Sequence IDs
wd	Working dir

**Value**

blast\_res data.frame or NULL

**See Also**

Other run-private: [batcher\(\)](#), [blast\\_clstr\(\)](#), [blast\\_filter\(\)](#), [blast\\_setup\(\)](#), [blast\\_sqs\(\)](#), [blastcache\\_save\(\)](#), [blastdb\\_gen\(\)](#), [blastn\\_run\(\)](#), [cache\\_rm\(\)](#), [cache\\_setup\(\)](#), [clade\\_select\(\)](#), [clstr2\\_calc\(\)](#), [clstr\\_all\(\)](#), [clstr\\_direct\(\)](#), [clstr\\_sqs\(\)](#), [clstr\\_subtree\(\)](#), [clstrarc\\_gen\(\)](#), [clstrarc\\_join\(\)](#), [clstrrec\\_gen\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_calc\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_join\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_merge\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_renumber\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_save\(\)](#), [cmdln\(\)](#), [descendants\\_get\(\)](#), [download\\_obj\\_check\(\)](#), [error\(\)](#), [gb\\_extract\(\)](#), [hierarchic\\_download\(\)](#), [info\(\)](#), [ncbocache\\_load\(\)](#), [ncbocache\\_save\(\)](#), [obj\\_check\(\)](#), [obj\\_load\(\)](#), [obj\\_save\(\)](#), [outfmt\\_get\(\)](#), [parameters\\_load\(\)](#), [parameters\\_setup\(\)](#), [parent\\_get\(\)](#), [progress\\_init\(\)](#), [progress\\_read\(\)](#), [progress\\_reset\(\)](#), [progress\\_save\(\)](#), [rank\\_get\(\)](#), [rawseqrec\\_breakdown\(\)](#), [safely\\_connect\(\)](#), [search\\_and\\_cache\(\)](#), [searchterm\\_gen\(\)](#), [seeds\\_blast\(\)](#), [seq\\_download\(\)](#), [seqarc\\_gen\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_augment\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_convert\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_gen\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_get\(\)](#), [sids\\_check\(\)](#), [sids\\_get\(\)](#), [sids\\_load\(\)](#), [sids\\_save\(\)](#), [sqs\\_count\(\)](#), [sqs\\_save\(\)](#), [stage\\_args\\_check\(\)](#), [stages\\_run\(\)](#), [tax\\_download\(\)](#), [taxdict\\_gen\(\)](#), [taxtree\\_gen\(\)](#), [txids\\_get\(\)](#), [txnds\\_count\(\)](#), [warn\(\)](#)

---

blastcache_save	<i>Save BLAST results to cache</i>
-----------------	------------------------------------

---

**Description**

Run whenever local BLAST runs are made to save results in cache in case the pipeline is run again.

**Usage**

```
blastcache_save(sids, wd, obj)
```

**Arguments**

sids	Sequence IDs
wd	Working dir
obj	BLAST result

**See Also**

Other run-private: [batcher\(\)](#), [blast\\_clstr\(\)](#), [blast\\_filter\(\)](#), [blast\\_setup\(\)](#), [blast\\_sqs\(\)](#), [blastcache\\_load\(\)](#), [blastdb\\_gen\(\)](#), [blastn\\_run\(\)](#), [cache\\_rm\(\)](#), [cache\\_setup\(\)](#), [clade\\_select\(\)](#), [clstr2\\_calc\(\)](#), [clstr\\_all\(\)](#), [clstr\\_direct\(\)](#), [clstr\\_sqs\(\)](#), [clstr\\_subtree\(\)](#), [clstrarc\\_gen\(\)](#), [clstrarc\\_join\(\)](#), [clstrrec\\_gen\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_calc\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_join\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_merge\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_renumber\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_save\(\)](#), [cmdln\(\)](#), [descendants\\_get\(\)](#), [download\\_obj\\_check\(\)](#), [error\(\)](#), [gb\\_extract\(\)](#), [hierarchic\\_download\(\)](#), [info\(\)](#), [ncbocache\\_load\(\)](#), [ncbocache\\_save\(\)](#), [obj\\_check\(\)](#), [obj\\_load\(\)](#), [obj\\_save\(\)](#), [outfmt\\_get\(\)](#), [parameters\\_load\(\)](#), [parameters\\_setup\(\)](#), [parent\\_get\(\)](#), [progress\\_init\(\)](#), [progress\\_read\(\)](#), [progress\\_reset\(\)](#), [progress\\_save\(\)](#), [rank\\_get\(\)](#), [rawseqrec\\_breakdown\(\)](#), [safely\\_connect\(\)](#), [search\\_and\\_cache\(\)](#), [searchterm\\_gen\(\)](#), [seeds\\_blast\(\)](#), [seq\\_download\(\)](#), [seqarc\\_gen\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_augment\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_convert\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_gen\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_get\(\)](#), [sids\\_check\(\)](#), [sids\\_get\(\)](#), [sids\\_load\(\)](#), [sids\\_save\(\)](#), [sqs\\_count\(\)](#), [sqs\\_save\(\)](#), [stage\\_args\\_check\(\)](#), [stages\\_run\(\)](#), [tax\\_download\(\)](#), [taxdict\\_gen\(\)](#), [taxtree\\_gen\(\)](#), [txids\\_get\(\)](#), [txnds\\_count\(\)](#), [warn\(\)](#)

---

blastdb\_gen

*Generate a BLAST database*


---

**Description**

Generate BLAST database in wd for given sequences.

**Usage**

```
blastdb_gen(sqs, dbf1, ps)
```

**Arguments**

sqs	Sequences
dbf1	Outfile for database
ps	Parameters list, generated with parameters()

**See Also**

Other run-private: [batcher\(\)](#), [blast\\_clstr\(\)](#), [blast\\_filter\(\)](#), [blast\\_setup\(\)](#), [blast\\_sqs\(\)](#), [blastcache\\_load\(\)](#), [blastcache\\_save\(\)](#), [blastn\\_run\(\)](#), [cache\\_rm\(\)](#), [cache\\_setup\(\)](#), [clade\\_select\(\)](#), [clstr2\\_calc\(\)](#), [clstr\\_all\(\)](#), [clstr\\_direct\(\)](#), [clstr\\_sqs\(\)](#), [clstr\\_subtree\(\)](#), [clstrarc\\_gen\(\)](#), [clstrarc\\_join\(\)](#), [clstrrec\\_gen\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_calc\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_join\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_merge\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_renumber\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_save\(\)](#), [cmdln\(\)](#), [descendants\\_get\(\)](#), [download\\_obj\\_check\(\)](#), [error\(\)](#), [gb\\_extract\(\)](#), [hierarchic\\_download\(\)](#), [info\(\)](#), [ncbocache\\_load\(\)](#), [ncbocache\\_save\(\)](#), [obj\\_check\(\)](#), [obj\\_load\(\)](#), [obj\\_save\(\)](#), [outfmt\\_get\(\)](#), [parameters\\_load\(\)](#), [parameters\\_setup\(\)](#), [parent\\_get\(\)](#), [progress\\_init\(\)](#), [progress\\_read\(\)](#), [progress\\_reset\(\)](#), [progress\\_save\(\)](#), [rank\\_get\(\)](#), [rawseqrec\\_breakdown\(\)](#), [safely\\_connect\(\)](#), [search\\_and\\_cache\(\)](#), [searchterm\\_gen\(\)](#), [seeds\\_blast\(\)](#), [seq\\_download\(\)](#), [seqarc\\_gen\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_augment\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_convert\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_gen\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_get\(\)](#), [sids\\_check\(\)](#), [sids\\_get\(\)](#), [sids\\_load\(\)](#), [sids\\_save\(\)](#), [sqs\\_count\(\)](#), [sqs\\_save\(\)](#), [stage\\_args\\_check\(\)](#), [stages\\_run\(\)](#), [tax\\_download\(\)](#), [taxdict\\_gen\(\)](#), [taxtree\\_gen\(\)](#), [txids\\_get\(\)](#), [txnds\\_count\(\)](#), [warn\(\)](#)

---

blastn_run	<i>Launch blastn</i>
------------	----------------------

---

**Description**

Use blastn to BLAST all-vs-all using a BLAST database.

**Usage**

```
blastn_run(dbfl, outfl, ps)
```

**Arguments**

dbfl	Database file
outfl	Output file
ps	Parameters list, generated with parameters()

**See Also**

Other run-private: [batcher\(\)](#), [blast\\_clstr\(\)](#), [blast\\_filter\(\)](#), [blast\\_setup\(\)](#), [blast\\_sqs\(\)](#), [blastcache\\_load\(\)](#), [blastcache\\_save\(\)](#), [blastdb\\_gen\(\)](#), [cache\\_rm\(\)](#), [cache\\_setup\(\)](#), [clade\\_select\(\)](#), [clstr2\\_calc\(\)](#), [clstr\\_all\(\)](#), [clstr\\_direct\(\)](#), [clstr\\_sqs\(\)](#), [clstr\\_subtree\(\)](#), [clstrarc\\_gen\(\)](#), [clstrarc\\_join\(\)](#), [clstrrec\\_gen\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_calc\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_join\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_merge\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_renumber\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_save\(\)](#), [cmdln\(\)](#), [descendants\\_get\(\)](#), [download\\_obj\\_check\(\)](#), [error\(\)](#), [gb\\_extract\(\)](#), [hierarchic\\_download\(\)](#), [info\(\)](#), [ncbocache\\_load\(\)](#), [ncbocache\\_save\(\)](#), [obj\\_check\(\)](#), [obj\\_load\(\)](#), [obj\\_save\(\)](#), [outfmt\\_get\(\)](#), [parameters\\_load\(\)](#), [parameters\\_setup\(\)](#), [parent\\_get\(\)](#), [progress\\_init\(\)](#), [progress\\_read\(\)](#), [progress\\_reset\(\)](#), [progress\\_save\(\)](#), [rank\\_get\(\)](#), [rawseqrec\\_breakdown\(\)](#), [safely\\_connect\(\)](#), [search\\_and\\_cache\(\)](#), [searchterm\\_gen\(\)](#), [seeds\\_blast\(\)](#), [seq\\_download\(\)](#), [seqarc\\_gen\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_augment\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_convert\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_gen\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_get\(\)](#), [sids\\_check\(\)](#), [sids\\_get\(\)](#), [sids\\_load\(\)](#), [sids\\_save\(\)](#), [sqs\\_count\(\)](#), [sqs\\_save\(\)](#), [stage\\_args\\_check\(\)](#), [stages\\_run\(\)](#), [tax\\_download\(\)](#), [taxdict\\_gen\(\)](#), [taxtree\\_gen\(\)](#), [txids\\_get\(\)](#), [txnds\\_count\(\)](#), [warn\(\)](#)

---

blast_clstr	<i>Cluster BLAST Results</i>
-------------	------------------------------

---

**Description**

Find single-linkage clusters from BLAST results. Identifies seed sequence.

**Usage**

```
blast_clstr(blast_res)
```

**Arguments**

blast_res	BLAST results
-----------	---------------

**Value**

List of list

list of cluster descriptions

**See Also**

Other run-private: `batcher()`, `blast_filter()`, `blast_setup()`, `blast_sqs()`, `blastcache_load()`, `blastcache_save()`, `blastdb_gen()`, `blastn_run()`, `cache_rm()`, `cache_setup()`, `clade_select()`, `clstr2_calc()`, `clstr_all()`, `clstr_direct()`, `clstr_sqs()`, `clstr_subtree()`, `clstrarc_gen()`, `clstrarc_join()`, `clstrrec_gen()`, `clstrs_calc()`, `clstrs_join()`, `clstrs_merge()`, `clstrs_renumber()`, `clstrs_save()`, `cmdln()`, `descendants_get()`, `download_obj_check()`, `error()`, `gb_extract()`, `hierarchic_download()`, `info()`, `ncbocache_load()`, `ncbocache_save()`, `obj_check()`, `obj_load()`, `obj_save()`, `outfmt_get()`, `parameters_load()`, `parameters_setup()`, `parent_get()`, `progress_init()`, `progress_read()`, `progress_reset()`, `progress_save()`, `rank_get()`, `rawseqrec_breakdown()`, `safely_connect()`, `search_and_cache()`, `searchterm_gen()`, `seeds_blast()`, `seq_download()`, `seqarc_gen()`, `seqrec_augment()`, `seqrec_convert()`, `seqrec_gen()`, `seqrec_get()`, `sids_check()`, `sids_get()`, `sids_load()`, `sids_save()`, `sqs_count()`, `sqs_save()`, `stage_args_check()`, `stages_run()`, `tax_download()`, `taxdict_gen()`, `taxtree_gen()`, `txids_get()`, `txnds_count()`, `warn()`

---

blast\_filter

*Filter BLAST results*


---

**Description**

Given a BLAST output, filters query-subject pairs such that only HSPs with a coverage greater than `mncvrg` (specified in the pipeline parameters) remain. Filters both: query-subject and subject-query pairs, if one of the coverages is insufficient. HSP coverage is obtained from the BLAST column `qcovs`.

**Usage**

```
blast_filter(blast_res, ps, lvl = 3)
```

**Arguments**

<code>blast_res</code>	BLAST results
<code>ps</code>	Parameters list, generated with <code>parameters()</code>
<code>lvl</code>	Integer, number of message indentations indicating code depth.

**Value**

data.frame blast res

**See Also**

Other run-private: `batcher()`, `blast_clstr()`, `blast_setup()`, `blast_sqs()`, `blastcache_load()`, `blastcache_save()`, `blastdb_gen()`, `blastn_run()`, `cache_rm()`, `cache_setup()`, `clade_select()`, `clstr2_calc()`, `clstr_all()`, `clstr_direct()`, `clstr_sqs()`, `clstr_subtree()`, `clstrarc_gen()`, `clstrarc_join()`, `clstrrec_gen()`, `clstrs_calc()`, `clstrs_join()`, `clstrs_merge()`, `clstrs_renumber()`, `clstrs_save()`, `cmdln()`, `descendants_get()`, `download_obj_check()`, `error()`, `gb_extract()`, `hierarchic_download()`, `info()`, `ncbocache_load()`, `ncbocache_save()`, `obj_check()`, `obj_load()`, `obj_save()`, `outfmt_get()`, `parameters_load()`, `parameters_setup()`, `parent_get()`, `progress_init()`, `progress_read()`, `progress_reset()`, `progress_save()`, `rank_get()`, `rawseqrec_breakdown()`, `safely_connect()`, `search_and_cache()`, `searchterm_gen()`, `seeds_blast()`, `seq_download()`, `seqarc_gen()`, `seqrec_augment()`, `seqrec_convert()`, `seqrec_gen()`, `seqrec_get()`, `sids_check()`, `sids_get()`, `sids_load()`, `sids_save()`, `sqs_count()`, `sqs_save()`, `stage_args_check()`, `stages_run()`, `tax_download()`, `taxdict_gen()`, `taxtree_gen()`, `txids_get()`, `txnds_count()`, `warn()`

---

blast\_setup

*Ensures NCBI BLAST tools are installed*


---

**Description**

Ensures NCBI BLAST executables are installed on the system. Tests version number of BLAST tools.

**Usage**

```
blast_setup(d, v, wd, otsdr)
```

**Arguments**

d	Directory to NCBI BLAST tools
v	v, T/F
wd	Working directory
otsdr	Run through outsider?

**Details**

BLAST tools must be version  $\geq 2.0$

**Value**

list

**See Also**

Other run-private: [batcher\(\)](#), [blast\\_clstr\(\)](#), [blast\\_filter\(\)](#), [blast\\_sq\(\)](#), [blastcache\\_load\(\)](#), [blastcache\\_save\(\)](#), [blastdb\\_gen\(\)](#), [blastn\\_run\(\)](#), [cache\\_rm\(\)](#), [cache\\_setup\(\)](#), [clade\\_select\(\)](#), [clstr2\\_calc\(\)](#), [clstr\\_all\(\)](#), [clstr\\_direct\(\)](#), [clstr\\_sq\(\)](#), [clstr\\_subtree\(\)](#), [clstrarc\\_gen\(\)](#), [clstrarc\\_join\(\)](#), [clstrrec\\_gen\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_calc\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_join\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_merge\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_renumber\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_save\(\)](#), [cmdln\(\)](#), [descendants\\_get\(\)](#), [download\\_obj\\_check\(\)](#), [error\(\)](#), [gb\\_extract\(\)](#), [hierarchic\\_download\(\)](#), [info\(\)](#), [ncbocache\\_load\(\)](#), [ncbocache\\_save\(\)](#), [obj\\_check\(\)](#), [obj\\_load\(\)](#), [obj\\_save\(\)](#), [outfmt\\_get\(\)](#), [parameters\\_load\(\)](#), [parameters\\_setup\(\)](#), [parent\\_get\(\)](#), [progress\\_init\(\)](#), [progress\\_read\(\)](#), [progress\\_reset\(\)](#), [progress\\_save\(\)](#), [rank\\_get\(\)](#), [rawseqrec\\_breakdown\(\)](#), [safely\\_connect\(\)](#), [search\\_and\\_cache\(\)](#), [searchterm\\_gen\(\)](#), [seeds\\_blast\(\)](#), [seq\\_download\(\)](#), [seqarc\\_gen\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_augment\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_convert\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_gen\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_get\(\)](#), [sids\\_check\(\)](#), [sids\\_get\(\)](#), [sids\\_load\(\)](#), [sids\\_save\(\)](#), [sq\\_count\(\)](#), [sq\\_save\(\)](#), [stage\\_args\\_check\(\)](#), [stages\\_run\(\)](#), [tax\\_download\(\)](#), [taxdict\\_gen\(\)](#), [taxtree\\_gen\(\)](#), [txids\\_get\(\)](#), [txnds\\_count\(\)](#), [warn\(\)](#)

blast\_sq

*BLAST All vs All***Description**

Return BLAST results from BLASTing all vs all for given sequences. Returns NULL if no BLAST results generated.

**Usage**

```
blast_sq(txid, typ, sqs, ps, lvl)
```

**Arguments**

txid	Taxonomic node ID, numeric
typ	Cluster type, 'direct' or 'subtree'
sqs	Sequences
ps	Parameters list, generated with parameters()
lvl	Integer, number of message indentations indicating code depth.

**Value**

blast\_res data.frame or NULL

**See Also**

Other run-private: [batcher\(\)](#), [blast\\_clstr\(\)](#), [blast\\_filter\(\)](#), [blast\\_setup\(\)](#), [blastcache\\_load\(\)](#), [blastcache\\_save\(\)](#), [blastdb\\_gen\(\)](#), [blastn\\_run\(\)](#), [cache\\_rm\(\)](#), [cache\\_setup\(\)](#), [clade\\_select\(\)](#), [clstr2\\_calc\(\)](#), [clstr\\_all\(\)](#), [clstr\\_direct\(\)](#), [clstr\\_sq\(\)](#), [clstr\\_subtree\(\)](#), [clstrarc\\_gen\(\)](#), [clstrarc\\_join\(\)](#), [clstrrec\\_gen\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_calc\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_join\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_merge\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_renumber\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_save\(\)](#), [cmdln\(\)](#), [descendants\\_get\(\)](#), [download\\_obj\\_check\(\)](#), [error\(\)](#), [gb\\_extract\(\)](#), [hierarchic\\_download\(\)](#), [info\(\)](#), [ncbocache\\_load\(\)](#), [ncbocache\\_save\(\)](#), [obj\\_check\(\)](#), [obj\\_load\(\)](#),



[obj\\_save\(\)](#), [outfmt\\_get\(\)](#), [parameters\\_load\(\)](#), [parameters\\_setup\(\)](#), [parent\\_get\(\)](#), [progress\\_init\(\)](#), [progress\\_read\(\)](#), [progress\\_reset\(\)](#), [progress\\_save\(\)](#), [rank\\_get\(\)](#), [rawseqrec\\_breakdown\(\)](#), [safely\\_connect\(\)](#), [search\\_and\\_cache\(\)](#), [searchterm\\_gen\(\)](#), [seeds\\_blast\(\)](#), [seq\\_download\(\)](#), [seqarc\\_gen\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_augment\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_convert\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_gen\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_get\(\)](#), [sids\\_check\(\)](#), [sids\\_get\(\)](#), [sids\\_load\(\)](#), [sids\\_save\(\)](#), [sqs\\_count\(\)](#), [sqs\\_save\(\)](#), [stage\\_args\\_check\(\)](#), [stages\\_run\(\)](#), [tax\\_download\(\)](#), [taxdict\\_gen\(\)](#), [taxtree\\_gen\(\)](#), [txids\\_get\(\)](#), [txnds\\_count\(\)](#), [warn\(\)](#)

---

blncdTree

*Generate a balanced tree*

---

### Description

Returns a balanced TreeMan tree with n tips.

### Usage

```
blncdTree(n, wndmtrx = FALSE, parallel = FALSE)
```

### Arguments

n	number of tips, integer, must be 3 or greater
wndmtrx	T/F add node matrix? Default FALSE.
parallel	T/F run in parallel? Default FALSE.

### Details

Equivalent to ape's `stree(type='balanced')` but returns a TreeMan tree. Tree is always rooted and bifurcating.

### See Also

[TreeMan-class](#), [randTree](#), [unblncdTree](#)

### Examples

```
tree <- blncdTree(5)
```

---

bromeliads	<i>bromeliads</i>
------------	-------------------

---

**Description**

bromeliads

**Format**

A TreeMan or Phylota object

**Examples**

```
data("bromeliads")
```

---

cache_rm	<i>Delete a cache</i>
----------	-----------------------

---

**Description**

Deletes a cache from a wd.

**Usage**

```
cache_rm(wd)
```

**Arguments**

wd	Working directory
----	-------------------

**See Also**

Other run-private: [batcher\(\)](#), [blast\\_clstr\(\)](#), [blast\\_filter\(\)](#), [blast\\_setup\(\)](#), [blast\\_sqz\(\)](#), [blastcache\\_load\(\)](#), [blastcache\\_save\(\)](#), [blastdb\\_gen\(\)](#), [blastn\\_run\(\)](#), [cache\\_setup\(\)](#), [clade\\_select\(\)](#), [clstr2\\_calc\(\)](#), [clstr\\_all\(\)](#), [clstr\\_direct\(\)](#), [clstr\\_sqz\(\)](#), [clstr\\_subtree\(\)](#), [clstrarc\\_gen\(\)](#), [clstrarc\\_join\(\)](#), [clstrrec\\_gen\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_calc\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_join\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_merge\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_renumber\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_save\(\)](#), [cmdln\(\)](#), [descendants\\_get\(\)](#), [download\\_obj\\_check\(\)](#), [error\(\)](#), [gb\\_extract\(\)](#), [hierarchic\\_download\(\)](#), [info\(\)](#), [ncbocache\\_load\(\)](#), [ncbocache\\_save\(\)](#), [obj\\_check\(\)](#), [obj\\_load\(\)](#), [obj\\_save\(\)](#), [outfmt\\_get\(\)](#), [parameters\\_load\(\)](#), [parameters\\_setup\(\)](#), [parent\\_get\(\)](#), [progress\\_init\(\)](#), [progress\\_read\(\)](#), [progress\\_reset\(\)](#), [progress\\_save\(\)](#), [rank\\_get\(\)](#), [rawseqrec\\_breakdown\(\)](#), [safely\\_connect\(\)](#), [search\\_and\\_cache\(\)](#), [searchterm\\_gen\(\)](#), [seeds\\_blast\(\)](#), [seq\\_download\(\)](#), [seqarc\\_gen\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_augment\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_convert\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_gen\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_get\(\)](#), [sids\\_check\(\)](#), [sids\\_get\(\)](#), [sids\\_load\(\)](#), [sids\\_save\(\)](#), [sqz\\_count\(\)](#), [sqz\\_save\(\)](#), [stage\\_args\\_check\(\)](#), [stages\\_run\(\)](#), [tax\\_download\(\)](#), [taxdict\\_gen\(\)](#), [taxtree\\_gen\(\)](#), [txids\\_get\(\)](#), [txnds\\_count\(\)](#), [warn\(\)](#)

---

cache_setup	<i>Set-up a cache</i>
-------------	-----------------------

---

**Description**

Creates a cache of parameters in the wd.

**Usage**

```
cache_setup(ps, ovrwrt = FALSE)
```

**Arguments**

ps	Parameters list, generated with parameters()
ovrwrt	Overwrite existing cache? Default FALSE.

**Details**

Warning: overwriting with this function will delete the existing cache.

**See Also**

Other run-private: [batcher\(\)](#), [blast\\_clstr\(\)](#), [blast\\_filter\(\)](#), [blast\\_setup\(\)](#), [blast\\_sqs\(\)](#), [blastcache\\_load\(\)](#), [blastcache\\_save\(\)](#), [blastdb\\_gen\(\)](#), [blastn\\_run\(\)](#), [cache\\_rm\(\)](#), [clade\\_select\(\)](#), [clstr2\\_calc\(\)](#), [clstr\\_all\(\)](#), [clstr\\_direct\(\)](#), [clstr\\_sqs\(\)](#), [clstr\\_subtree\(\)](#), [clstrarc\\_gen\(\)](#), [clstrarc\\_join\(\)](#), [clstrrec\\_gen\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_calc\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_join\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_merge\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_renumber\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_save\(\)](#), [cmdln\(\)](#), [descendants\\_get\(\)](#), [download\\_obj\\_check\(\)](#), [error\(\)](#), [gb\\_extract\(\)](#), [hierarchic\\_download\(\)](#), [info\(\)](#), [ncbocache\\_load\(\)](#), [ncbocache\\_save\(\)](#), [obj\\_check\(\)](#), [obj\\_load\(\)](#), [obj\\_save\(\)](#), [outfmt\\_get\(\)](#), [parameters\\_load\(\)](#), [parameters\\_setup\(\)](#), [parent\\_get\(\)](#), [progress\\_init\(\)](#), [progress\\_read\(\)](#), [progress\\_reset\(\)](#), [progress\\_save\(\)](#), [rank\\_get\(\)](#), [rawseqrec\\_breakdown\(\)](#), [safely\\_connect\(\)](#), [search\\_and\\_cache\(\)](#), [searchterm\\_gen\(\)](#), [seeds\\_blast\(\)](#), [seq\\_download\(\)](#), [seqarc\\_gen\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_augment\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_convert\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_gen\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_get\(\)](#), [sids\\_check\(\)](#), [sids\\_get\(\)](#), [sids\\_load\(\)](#), [sids\\_save\(\)](#), [sqs\\_count\(\)](#), [sqs\\_save\(\)](#), [stage\\_args\\_check\(\)](#), [stages\\_run\(\)](#), [tax\\_download\(\)](#), [taxdict\\_gen\(\)](#), [taxtree\\_gen\(\)](#), [txids\\_get\(\)](#), [txnds\\_count\(\)](#), [warn\(\)](#)

---

calcDstBLD	<i>Calculate the BLD between two trees</i>
------------	--

---

**Description**

Returns the branch length distance between two trees.

**Usage**

```
calcDstBLD(tree_1, tree_2, nrmlsd = FALSE, parallel = FALSE, progress = "none")
```

**Arguments**

tree_1	TreeMan object
tree_2	TreeMan object
nrmlsd	Boolean, should returned value be between 0 and 1? Default, FALSE.
parallel	logical, make parallel?
progress	name of the progress bar to use, see <a href="#">create_progress_bar</a>

**Details**

BLD is the Robinson-Foulds distance weighted by branch length. Instead of summing the differences in partitions between the two trees, the metric takes the square root of the squared difference in branch lengths. Parallelizable.

**References**

Kuhner, M. K. and Felsenstein, J. (1994) Simulation comparison of phylogeny algorithms under equal and unequal evolutionary rates. *Molecular Biology and Evolution*, 11, 459-468.

**See Also**

[calcDstTrp](#), [calcDstRF](#) <https://github.com/DomBennett/treeman/wiki/calc-methods>

**Examples**

```
tree_1 <- randTree(10)
tree_2 <- randTree(10)
calcDstBLD(tree_1, tree_2)
```

---

calcDstMtrx

*Calculate the distance matrix*

---

**Description**

Returns a distance matrix for specified ids of a tree.

**Usage**

```
calcDstMtrx(tree, ids, parallel = FALSE, progress = "none")
```

**Arguments**

tree	TreeMan object
ids	IDs of nodes/tips
parallel	logical, make parallel?
progress	name of the progress bar to use, see <a href="#">create_progress_bar</a>

**Details**

The distance between every id in the tree is calculated by summing the lengths of the branches that connect them. This can be useful for testing the distances between trees, checking for evolutionary isolated tips etc. Parallelizable.

**See Also**

calcDstBLD, calcDstRF, calcDstTrp <https://github.com/DomBennett/treeman/wiki/calc-methods>

**Examples**

```
# checking the distance between two trees

tree_1 <- randTree(10)
tree_2 <- randTree(10)
dmat1 <- calcDstMtrx(tree_1, tree_1["tips"])
dmat2 <- calcDstMtrx(tree_2, tree_2["tips"])
mdl <- cor.test(x = dmat1, y = dmat2)
as.numeric(1 - mdl$estimate) # 1 - Pearson's r
```

---

calcDstRF

*Calculate the Robinson-Foulds distance between two trees*

---

**Description**

Returns the Robinson-Foulds distance between two trees.

**Usage**

```
calcDstRF(tree_1, tree_2, nrmlsd = FALSE)
```

**Arguments**

tree_1	TreeMan object
tree_2	TreeMan object
nrmlsd	Boolean, should returned value be between 0 and 1? Default, FALSE.

**Details**

RF distance is calculated as the sum of partitions in one tree that are not shared by the other. The maximum number of split differences is the total number of nodes in both trees (excluding the roots). Trees are assumed to be bifurcating, this is not tested. The metric is calculated as if trees are unrooted. Parallelizable.

**References**

Robinson, D. R.; Foulds, L. R. (1981). "Comparison of phylogenetic trees". *Mathematical Biosciences* 53: 131-147.

**See Also**

[calcDstBLD](#), [calcDstTrp](#) <https://github.com/DomBennett/treeman/wiki/calc-methods>

**Examples**

```
tree_1 <- randTree(10)
tree_2 <- randTree(10)
calcDstRF(tree_1, tree_2)
```

---

calcDstTrp	<i>Calculate the triplet distance between two trees</i>
------------	---

---

**Description**

Returns the triplet distance between two trees.

**Usage**

```
calcDstTrp(tree_1, tree_2, nrmlsd = FALSE, parallel = FALSE, progress = "none")
```

**Arguments**

tree_1	TreeMan object
tree_2	TreeMan object
nrmlsd	Boolean, should returned value be between 0 and 1? Default, FALSE.
parallel	logical, make parallel?
progress	name of the progress bar to use, see <a href="#">create_progress_bar</a>

**Details**

The triplet distance is calculated as the sum of different outgroups among every triplet of tips between the two trees. Normalisation is performed by dividing the resulting number by the total number of triplets shared between the two trees. The triplet distance is calculated only for shared tips between the two trees. Parallelizable.

**References**

Critchlow DE, Pearl DK, Qian C. (1996) The Triples Distance for rooted bifurcating phylogenetic trees. *Systematic Biology*, 45, 323-34.

**See Also**

[calcDstBLD](#), [calcDstRF](#) <https://github.com/DomBennett/treeman/wiki/calc-methods>

**Examples**

```
tree_1 <- randTree(10)
tree_2 <- randTree(10)
calcDstTrp(tree_1, tree_2)
```

---

calcFrPrp	<i>Calculate evolutionary distinctness</i>
-----------	--

---

## Description

Returns the evolutionary distinctness of ids using the fair proportion metric.

## Usage

```
calcFrPrp(tree, tids, progress = "none")
```

## Arguments

tree	TreeMan object
tids	tip IDs
progress	name of the progress bar to use, see <a href="#">create_progress_bar</a>

## Details

The fair proportion metric calculates the evolutionary distinctness of tips in a tree through summing the total amount of branch length each tip represents, where each branch in the tree is evenly divided between all descendants. Parallelizable.

## References

Isaac, N.J.B., Turvey, S.T., Collen, B., Waterman, C. and Baillie, J.E.M. (2007). Mammals on the EDGE: conservation priorities based on threat and phylogeny. PLoS ONE, 2, e296.

## See Also

[calcPhyDv](#), [calcPrtFrPrp](#), <https://github.com/DomBennett/treeman/wiki/calc-methods>

## Examples

```
tree <- randTree(10)
calcFrPrp(tree, tree["tips"])
```

---

calcNdBlnc                      *Calculate the balance of a node*

---

**Description**

Returns the balance of a node.

**Usage**

```
calcNdBlnc(tree, id)
```

**Arguments**

tree	TreeMan object
id	node id

**Details**

Balance is calculated as the absolute difference between the number of descendants of the two bifurcating edges of a node and the expected value for a balanced tree. NA is returned if the node is polytomous or a tip.

**See Also**

`calcNdsBlnc`, <https://github.com/DomBennett/treeman/wiki/calc-methods>

**Examples**

```
tree <- randTree(10)
calcNdBlnc(tree, id = tree["root"]) # root balance
```

---

calcNdsBlnc                      *Calculate the balances of all nodes*

---

**Description**

Returns the absolute differences in number of descendants for bifurcating branches of every node

**Usage**

```
calcNdsBlnc(tree, ids, parallel = FALSE, progress = "none")
```



**Arguments**

tree	TreeMan object
ids	node ids
parallel	logical, make parallel?
progress	name of the progress bar to use, see <a href="#">create_progress_bar</a>

**Details**

Runs calcNdBlnc() across all node IDs. NA is returned if the node is polytomous. Parallelizable.

**See Also**

[calcNdBlnc](https://github.com/DomBennett/treeman/wiki/calc-methods), <https://github.com/DomBennett/treeman/wiki/calc-methods>

**Examples**

```
tree <- randTree(10)
calcNdsBlnc(tree, ids = tree["nds"])
```

---

calcOvrlp

*Calculate phylogenetic overlap*

---

**Description**

Returns the sum of branch lengths represented by ids\_1 and ids\_2 for a tree.

**Usage**

```
calcOvrlp(
  tree,
  ids_1,
  ids_2,
  nrmlsd = FALSE,
  parallel = FALSE,
  progress = "none"
)
```

**Arguments**

tree	TreeMan object
ids_1	tip ids of community 1
ids_2	tip ids of community 2
nrmlsd	Boolean, should returned value be between 0 and 1? Default, FALSE.
parallel	logical, make parallel?
progress	name of the progress bar to use, see <a href="#">create_progress_bar</a>

## Details

Use this to calculate the sum of branch lengths that are represented between two communities. This measure is also known as the unique fraction. It can be used to measure concepts of phylogenetic turnover. Parallelizable.

## References

Lozupone, C., & Knight, R. (2005). UniFrac: a new phylogenetic method for comparing microbial communities. *Applied and Environmental Microbiology*, 71(12), 8228-35.

## See Also

calcPhyDv <https://github.com/DomBennett/treeman/wiki/calc-methods>

## Examples

```
tree <- randTree(10)
ids_1 <- sample(tree["tips"], 5)
ids_2 <- sample(tree["tips"], 5)
calcOvrlp(tree, ids_1, ids_2)
```

---

calcPhyDv

*Calculate phylogenetic diversity*

---

## Description

Returns the phylogenetic diversity of a tree for the tips specified.

## Usage

```
calcPhyDv(tree, tids, parallel = FALSE, progress = "none")
```

## Arguments

tree	TreeMan object
tids	tip ids
parallel	logical, make parallel?
progress	name of the progress bar to use, see <a href="#">create_progress_bar</a>

## Details

Faith's phylogenetic diversity is calculated as the sum of all connected branches for specified tips in a tree. It can be used to investigate how biodiversity as measured by the phylogeny changes. Parallelizable. The function uses `getCnntdNds()`.

**References**

Faith, D. (1992). Conservation evaluation and phylogenetic diversity. *Biological Conservation*, 61, 1-10.

**See Also**

[calcFrPrp](#), [calcOvrIp](#), [getCnnctdNds](#), <https://github.com/DomBennett/treeman/wiki/calc-methods>

**Examples**

```
tree <- randTree(10)
calcPhyDv(tree, tree["tips"])
```

---

calcPrtFrPrp	<i>Calculate evolutionary distinctness for part of tree</i>
--------------	---

---

**Description**

Returns the evolutionary distinctness of ids using the fair proportion metric.

**Usage**

```
calcPrtFrPrp(tree, tids, ignr = NULL, progress = "none")
```

**Arguments**

tree	TreeMan object
tids	tip IDs
ignr	tips to ignore in calculation
progress	name of the progress bar to use, see <a href="#">create_progress_bar</a>

**Details**

Extension of `calcFrPrp()` but with ignore argument. Use `ignr` to ignore certain tips from calculation. For example, if any of tips are extinct you may wish to ignore these.

**References**

Isaac, N.J.B., Turvey, S.T., Collen, B., Waterman, C. and Baillie, J.E.M. (2007). Mammals on the EDGE: conservation priorities based on threat and phylogeny. *PLoS ONE*, 2, e296.

**See Also**

[calcFrPrp](#) <https://github.com/DomBennett/treeman/wiki/calc-methods>

**Examples**

```
tree <- randTree(10)
calcPrtFrPrp(tree, c("t1", "t3"), ignr = "t2")
```

---

calc_mad	<i>Calculate MAD score</i>
----------	----------------------------

---

### Description

For all sequences in a cluster(s) the MAD score.

### Usage

```
calc_mad(phylob, cid)
```

### Arguments

phylob	Phylob object
cid	Cluster ID(s)

### Details

MAD is a measure of the deviation in sequence length of a cluster. Values range from 0 to 1. Clusters with values close to 1 have sequences with similar lengths.

### Value

vector

### See Also

Other tools-public: [calc\\_wrdfrq\(\)](#), [drop\\_by\\_rank\(\)](#), [drop\\_clstrs\(\)](#), [drop\\_sq\(\)](#), [get\\_clstr\\_slot\(\)](#), [get\\_nsqs\(\)](#), [get\\_ntaxa\(\)](#), [get\\_sq\\_slot\(\)](#), [get\\_stage\\_times\(\)](#), [get\\_tx\\_slot\(\)](#), [get\\_txids\(\)](#), [is\\_txid\\_in\\_clstr\(\)](#), [is\\_txid\\_in\\_sq\(\)](#), [list\\_clstrrec\\_slots\(\)](#), [list\\_ncbi\\_ranks\(\)](#), [list\\_seqrec\\_slots\(\)](#), [list\\_taxrec\\_slots\(\)](#), [plot\\_phylob\\_pa\(\)](#), [plot\\_phylob\\_treemap\(\)](#), [read\\_phylob\(\)](#), [write\\_sq\(\)](#)

### Examples

```
data("bromeliads")
random_cids <- sample(bromeliads@cids, 10)
(calc_mad(phylob = bromeliads, cid = random_cids))
```

---

calc_wrdfrq	<i>Calculate word frequencies</i>
-------------	-----------------------------------

---

### Description

For all sequences in a cluster(s) calculate the frequency of separate words in either the sequence definitions or the reported feature name.

### Usage

```
calc_wrdfrq(  
  phylota,  
  cid,  
  min_frq = 0.1,  
  min_nchar = 1,  
  type = c("dfln", "nm"),  
  ignr_pttrn = "[^a-z0-9]"  
)
```

### Arguments

phylota	Phylota object
cid	Cluster ID(s)
min_frq	Minimum frequency
min_nchar	Minimum number of characters for a word
type	Definitions (dfln) or features (nm)
ignr_pttrn	Ignore pattern, REGEX for text to ignore.

### Details

By default, anything that is not alphanumeric is ignored. 'dfln' and 'nm' match the slot names in a SeqRec, see `list_seqrec_slots()`.

### Value

list

### See Also

Other tools-public: [calc\\_mad\(\)](#), [drop\\_by\\_rank\(\)](#), [drop\\_clstrs\(\)](#), [drop\\_sq\(\)](#), [get\\_clstr\\_slot\(\)](#), [get\\_nsqs\(\)](#), [get\\_ntaxa\(\)](#), [get\\_sq\\_slot\(\)](#), [get\\_stage\\_times\(\)](#), [get\\_tx\\_slot\(\)](#), [get\\_txids\(\)](#), [is\\_txid\\_in\\_clstr\(\)](#), [is\\_txid\\_in\\_sq\(\)](#), [list\\_clstrrec\\_slots\(\)](#), [list\\_ncbi\\_ranks\(\)](#), [list\\_seqrec\\_slots\(\)](#), [list\\_taxrec\\_slots\(\)](#), [plot\\_phylota\\_pa\(\)](#), [plot\\_phylota\\_treemap\(\)](#), [read\\_phylota\(\)](#), [write\\_sq\(\)](#)

## Examples

```
data('dragonflies')
# work out what gene region the cluster is likely representing with word freqs.
random_cids <- sample(dragonflies@cids, 10)
# most frequent words in definition line
(calc_wrdfrq(phyloata = dragonflies, cid = random_cids, type = 'dfln'))
# most frequent words in feature name
(calc_wrdfrq(phyloata = dragonflies, cid = random_cids, type = 'nm'))
```

---

checkNdlst	<i>Check if ndlst is correct</i>
------------	----------------------------------

---

## Description

Return T/F for ndlst consistency

## Usage

```
checkNdlst(ndlst, root)
```

## Arguments

ndlst	ndlst
root	root ID

## Details

Tests whether each node in tree points to valid other node IDs. Also ensures 'spn' and 'root' are correct. Reports nodes that have errors.

## See Also

[fastCheckTreeMan](#), [checkTreeMen](#)

## Examples

```
tree <- randTree(100)
(checkNdlst(tree@endlst, tree@root))
```

---

checkTreeMen	<i>Check if trees are correct</i>
--------------	-----------------------------------

---

**Description**

Return T/F if trees is a true TreeMen object

**Usage**

```
checkTreeMen(object)
```

**Arguments**

object	TreeMen object
--------	----------------

**Details**

Tests whether all trees in object are TreeMan objects

**See Also**

[checkNdLst](#)

---

clade_select	<i>Get all node IDs that will be processed</i>
--------------	--

---

**Description**

All nodes with less than maximum number of nodes and sequences.

**Usage**

```
clade_select(txdict, ps)
```

**Arguments**

txdict	TxDct
ps	Parameters list, generated with parameters()

**Value**

vector of txids

**See Also**

Other run-private: [batcher\(\)](#), [blast\\_clstr\(\)](#), [blast\\_filter\(\)](#), [blast\\_setup\(\)](#), [blast\\_sqs\(\)](#), [blastcache\\_load\(\)](#), [blastcache\\_save\(\)](#), [blastdb\\_gen\(\)](#), [blastn\\_run\(\)](#), [cache\\_rm\(\)](#), [cache\\_setup\(\)](#), [clstr2\\_calc\(\)](#), [clstr\\_all\(\)](#), [clstr\\_direct\(\)](#), [clstr\\_sqs\(\)](#), [clstr\\_subtree\(\)](#), [clstrarc\\_gen\(\)](#), [clstrarc\\_join\(\)](#), [clstrrec\\_gen\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_calc\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_join\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_merge\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_renumber\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_save\(\)](#), [cmdln\(\)](#), [descendants\\_get\(\)](#), [download\\_obj\\_check\(\)](#), [error\(\)](#), [gb\\_extract\(\)](#), [hierarchic\\_download\(\)](#), [info\(\)](#), [ncbocache\\_load\(\)](#), [ncbocache\\_save\(\)](#), [obj\\_check\(\)](#), [obj\\_load\(\)](#), [obj\\_save\(\)](#), [outfmt\\_get\(\)](#), [parameters\\_load\(\)](#), [parameters\\_setup\(\)](#), [parent\\_get\(\)](#), [progress\\_init\(\)](#), [progress\\_read\(\)](#), [progress\\_reset\(\)](#), [progress\\_save\(\)](#), [rank\\_get\(\)](#), [rawseqrec\\_breakdown\(\)](#), [safely\\_connect\(\)](#), [search\\_and\\_cache\(\)](#), [searchterm\\_gen\(\)](#), [seeds\\_blast\(\)](#), [seq\\_download\(\)](#), [seqarc\\_gen\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_augment\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_convert\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_gen\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_get\(\)](#), [sids\\_check\(\)](#), [sids\\_get\(\)](#), [sids\\_load\(\)](#), [sids\\_save\(\)](#), [sqs\\_count\(\)](#), [sqs\\_save\(\)](#), [stage\\_args\\_check\(\)](#), [stages\\_run\(\)](#), [tax\\_download\(\)](#), [taxdict\\_gen\(\)](#), [taxtree\\_gen\(\)](#), [txids\\_get\(\)](#), [txnds\\_count\(\)](#), [warn\(\)](#)

---

clstr2\_calc

*Cluster sets of clusters identified in cluster stage*


---

**Description**

Loads cluster sets from cache. Extracts seed sequences and runs all-v-all BLAST of seeds to identify sister clusters. Sisters are then merged. An object of all sequences and clusters is then saved in cache.

**Usage**

```
clstr2_calc(ps)
```

**Arguments**

ps                   Parameters list, generated with [parameters\(\)](#)

**See Also**

Other run-private: [batcher\(\)](#), [blast\\_clstr\(\)](#), [blast\\_filter\(\)](#), [blast\\_setup\(\)](#), [blast\\_sqs\(\)](#), [blastcache\\_load\(\)](#), [blastcache\\_save\(\)](#), [blastdb\\_gen\(\)](#), [blastn\\_run\(\)](#), [cache\\_rm\(\)](#), [cache\\_setup\(\)](#), [clade\\_select\(\)](#), [clstr\\_all\(\)](#), [clstr\\_direct\(\)](#), [clstr\\_sqs\(\)](#), [clstr\\_subtree\(\)](#), [clstrarc\\_gen\(\)](#), [clstrarc\\_join\(\)](#), [clstrrec\\_gen\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_calc\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_join\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_merge\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_renumber\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_save\(\)](#), [cmdln\(\)](#), [descendants\\_get\(\)](#), [download\\_obj\\_check\(\)](#), [error\(\)](#), [gb\\_extract\(\)](#), [hierarchic\\_download\(\)](#), [info\(\)](#), [ncbocache\\_load\(\)](#), [ncbocache\\_save\(\)](#), [obj\\_check\(\)](#), [obj\\_load\(\)](#), [obj\\_save\(\)](#), [outfmt\\_get\(\)](#), [parameters\\_load\(\)](#), [parameters\\_setup\(\)](#), [parent\\_get\(\)](#), [progress\\_init\(\)](#), [progress\\_read\(\)](#), [progress\\_reset\(\)](#), [progress\\_save\(\)](#), [rank\\_get\(\)](#), [rawseqrec\\_breakdown\(\)](#), [safely\\_connect\(\)](#), [search\\_and\\_cache\(\)](#), [searchterm\\_gen\(\)](#), [seeds\\_blast\(\)](#), [seq\\_download\(\)](#), [seqarc\\_gen\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_augment\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_convert\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_gen\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_get\(\)](#), [sids\\_check\(\)](#), [sids\\_get\(\)](#), [sids\\_load\(\)](#), [sids\\_save\(\)](#), [sqs\\_count\(\)](#), [sqs\\_save\(\)](#), [stage\\_args\\_check\(\)](#), [stages\\_run\(\)](#), [tax\\_download\(\)](#), [taxdict\\_gen\(\)](#), [taxtree\\_gen\(\)](#), [txids\\_get\(\)](#), [txnds\\_count\(\)](#), [warn\(\)](#)



---

ClstrArc-class	<i>Cluster record archive</i>
----------------	-------------------------------

---

**Description**

Multiple cluster records.

**Usage**

```
## S4 method for signature 'ClstrArc'
as.character(x)

## S4 method for signature 'ClstrArc'
show(object)

## S4 method for signature 'ClstrArc'
print(x)

## S4 method for signature 'ClstrArc'
str(object, max.level = 2L, ...)

## S4 method for signature 'ClstrArc'
summary(object)

## S4 method for signature 'ClstrArc,character'
x[[i]]

## S4 method for signature 'ClstrArc,character,missing,missing'
x[i, j, ..., drop = TRUE]
```

**Arguments**

x	ClstrArc object
object	ClstrArc object
max.level	Maximum level of nesting for str()
...	Further arguments for str()
i	cid(s)
j	Unused
drop	Unused

**Slots**

ids Vector of cluster record IDs  
 clstrs List of ClstrArc named by ID

**See Also**

Other run-public: [ClstrRec-class](#), [Phylota-class](#), [SeqArc-class](#), [SeqRec-class](#), [TaxDict-class](#), [TaxRec-class](#), [clusters2\\_run\(\)](#), [clusters\\_run\(\)](#), [parameters\\_reset\(\)](#), [reset\(\)](#), [restart\(\)](#), [run\(\)](#), [setup\(\)](#), [taxise\\_run\(\)](#)

**Examples**

```
data('aotus')
clstrarc <- aotus@clstrs
# this is a ClstrArc object
# it contains cluster records
show(clstrarc)
# you can access its different data slots with @
clstrarc@ids      # unique cluster ID
clstrarc@clstrs  # list of cluster records
# access cluster records [[
(clstrarc[[clstrarc@ids[[1]]]]) # first cluster record
# generate new cluster archives with [
(clstrarc[clstrarc@ids[1:10]]) # first 10 clusters
```

---

clstrarc\_gen

*Generate cluster archive container class*


---

**Description**

Takes a list of ClstrRecs, returns a ClstrArc.

**Usage**

```
clstrarc_gen(clstrrecs)
```

**Arguments**

clstrrecs      list of ClstrRecs

**Value**

ClstrArc

**See Also**

Other run-private: [batcher\(\)](#), [blast\\_clstr\(\)](#), [blast\\_filter\(\)](#), [blast\\_setup\(\)](#), [blast\\_sqc\(\)](#), [blastcache\\_load\(\)](#), [blastcache\\_save\(\)](#), [blastdb\\_gen\(\)](#), [blastn\\_run\(\)](#), [cache\\_rm\(\)](#), [cache\\_setup\(\)](#), [clade\\_select\(\)](#), [clstr2\\_calc\(\)](#), [clstr\\_all\(\)](#), [clstr\\_direct\(\)](#), [clstr\\_sqc\(\)](#), [clstr\\_subtree\(\)](#), [clstrarc\\_join\(\)](#), [clstrrec\\_gen\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_calc\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_join\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_merge\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_renumber\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_save\(\)](#), [cmdln\(\)](#), [descendants\\_get\(\)](#), [download\\_obj\\_check\(\)](#), [error\(\)](#), [gb\\_extract\(\)](#), [hierarchic\\_download\(\)](#), [info\(\)](#), [ncbocache\\_load\(\)](#), [ncbocache\\_save\(\)](#), [obj\\_check\(\)](#), [obj\\_load\(\)](#), [obj\\_save\(\)](#), [outfmt\\_get\(\)](#), [parameters\\_load\(\)](#), [parameters\\_setup\(\)](#), [parent\\_get\(\)](#), [progress\\_init\(\)](#),

[progress\\_read\(\)](#), [progress\\_reset\(\)](#), [progress\\_save\(\)](#), [rank\\_get\(\)](#), [rawseqrec\\_breakdown\(\)](#),  
[safely\\_connect\(\)](#), [search\\_and\\_cache\(\)](#), [searchterm\\_gen\(\)](#), [seeds\\_blast\(\)](#), [seq\\_download\(\)](#),  
[seqarc\\_gen\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_augment\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_convert\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_gen\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_get\(\)](#), [sids\\_check\(\)](#),  
[sids\\_get\(\)](#), [sids\\_load\(\)](#), [sids\\_save\(\)](#), [sqs\\_count\(\)](#), [sqs\\_save\(\)](#), [stage\\_args\\_check\(\)](#), [stages\\_run\(\)](#),  
[tax\\_download\(\)](#), [taxdict\\_gen\(\)](#), [taxtree\\_gen\(\)](#), [txids\\_get\(\)](#), [txnds\\_count\(\)](#), [warn\(\)](#)

---

clstrarc\_join

*Join two cluster archive*


---

### Description

Take two ClstrArc classes and join them into a single ClstrArc.

### Usage

```
clstrarc_join(clstrarc_1, clstrarc_2)
```

### Arguments

clstrarc_1	ClstrArc
clstrarc_2	ClstrArc

### Value

ClstrArc

### See Also

Other run-private: [batcher\(\)](#), [blast\\_clstr\(\)](#), [blast\\_filter\(\)](#), [blast\\_setup\(\)](#), [blast\\_sqs\(\)](#),  
[blastcache\\_load\(\)](#), [blastcache\\_save\(\)](#), [blastdb\\_gen\(\)](#), [blastn\\_run\(\)](#), [cache\\_rm\(\)](#), [cache\\_setup\(\)](#),  
[clade\\_select\(\)](#), [clstr2\\_calc\(\)](#), [clstr\\_all\(\)](#), [clstr\\_direct\(\)](#), [clstr\\_sqs\(\)](#), [clstr\\_subtree\(\)](#),  
[clstrarc\\_gen\(\)](#), [clstrrec\\_gen\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_calc\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_join\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_merge\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_renumber\(\)](#),  
[clstrs\\_save\(\)](#), [cmdln\(\)](#), [descendants\\_get\(\)](#), [download\\_obj\\_check\(\)](#), [error\(\)](#), [gb\\_extract\(\)](#),  
[hierarchic\\_download\(\)](#), [info\(\)](#), [ncbocache\\_load\(\)](#), [ncbocache\\_save\(\)](#), [obj\\_check\(\)](#), [obj\\_load\(\)](#),  
[obj\\_save\(\)](#), [outfmt\\_get\(\)](#), [parameters\\_load\(\)](#), [parameters\\_setup\(\)](#), [parent\\_get\(\)](#), [progress\\_init\(\)](#),  
[progress\\_read\(\)](#), [progress\\_reset\(\)](#), [progress\\_save\(\)](#), [rank\\_get\(\)](#), [rawseqrec\\_breakdown\(\)](#),  
[safely\\_connect\(\)](#), [search\\_and\\_cache\(\)](#), [searchterm\\_gen\(\)](#), [seeds\\_blast\(\)](#), [seq\\_download\(\)](#),  
[seqarc\\_gen\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_augment\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_convert\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_gen\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_get\(\)](#), [sids\\_check\(\)](#),  
[sids\\_get\(\)](#), [sids\\_load\(\)](#), [sids\\_save\(\)](#), [sqs\\_count\(\)](#), [sqs\\_save\(\)](#), [stage\\_args\\_check\(\)](#), [stages\\_run\(\)](#),  
[tax\\_download\(\)](#), [taxdict\\_gen\(\)](#), [taxtree\\_gen\(\)](#), [txids\\_get\(\)](#), [txnds\\_count\(\)](#), [warn\(\)](#)

---

 ClstrRec-class

*Cluster record*


---

**Description**

Cluster record contains all information on a cluster.

**Usage**

```
## S4 method for signature 'ClstrRec'
as.character(x)
```

```
## S4 method for signature 'ClstrRec'
show(object)
```

```
## S4 method for signature 'ClstrRec'
print(x)
```

```
## S4 method for signature 'ClstrRec'
str(object, max.level = 2L, ...)
```

```
## S4 method for signature 'ClstrRec'
summary(object)
```

**Arguments**

x	ClstrRec object
object	ClstrRec object
max.level	Maximum level of nesting for str()
...	Further arguments for str()

**Slots**

id Cluster ID, integer  
 sids Sequence IDs  
 nsqs Number of sequences  
 txids Source txids for sequences  
 ntx Number of taxa  
 typ Cluster type: direct, subtree or merged  
 seed Seed sequence ID  
 prnt Parent taxonomic ID

**See Also**

Other run-public: [ClstrArc-class](#), [Phylota-class](#), [SeqArc-class](#), [SeqRec-class](#), [TaxDict-class](#), [TaxRec-class](#), [clusters2\\_run\(\)](#), [clusters\\_run\(\)](#), [parameters\\_reset\(\)](#), [reset\(\)](#), [restart\(\)](#), [run\(\)](#), [setup\(\)](#), [taxise\\_run\(\)](#)

**Examples**

```
data('aotus')
clstrrec <- aotus@clstrs@clstrs[[1]]
# this is a ClstrRec object
# it contains cluster information
show(clstrrec)
# you can access its different data slots with @
clstrrec@id      # cluster id
clstrrec@sids    # sequence IDs
clstrrec@nsqs    # number of sequences
clstrrec@txids   # taxonomic IDs of sequences
clstrrec@ntx     # number unique taxonomic IDs
clstrrec@typ     # cluster type: merged, subtree, direct or paraphyly
clstrrec@prnt    # MRCA of all taxa
clstrrec@seed    # most inter-connected sequence
```

---

clstrrec_gen	<i>Generate list of clusters</i>
--------------	----------------------------------

---

**Description**

Takes a list of lists of cluster descriptions and generates ClstrRecs.

**Usage**

```
clstrrec_gen(clstr_list, txid, sqs, typ)
```

**Arguments**

clstr_list	List of list of cluster descriptions
txid	Taxonomic node ID
sqs	Sequence records
typ	Cluster type

**Value**

list of ClstrRecs

**See Also**

Other run-private: [batcher\(\)](#), [blast\\_clstr\(\)](#), [blast\\_filter\(\)](#), [blast\\_setup\(\)](#), [blast\\_sqs\(\)](#), [blastcache\\_load\(\)](#), [blastcache\\_save\(\)](#), [blastdb\\_gen\(\)](#), [blastn\\_run\(\)](#), [cache\\_rm\(\)](#), [cache\\_setup\(\)](#), [clade\\_select\(\)](#), [clstr2\\_calc\(\)](#), [clstr\\_all\(\)](#), [clstr\\_direct\(\)](#), [clstr\\_sqs\(\)](#), [clstr\\_subtree\(\)](#), [clstrarc\\_gen\(\)](#), [clstrarc\\_join\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_calc\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_join\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_merge\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_renumber\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_save\(\)](#), [cmdln\(\)](#), [descendants\\_get\(\)](#), [download\\_obj\\_check\(\)](#), [error\(\)](#), [gb\\_extract\(\)](#), [hierarchic\\_download\(\)](#), [info\(\)](#), [ncbocache\\_load\(\)](#), [ncbocache\\_save\(\)](#), [obj\\_check\(\)](#), [obj\\_load\(\)](#), [obj\\_save\(\)](#), [outfmt\\_get\(\)](#), [parameters\\_load\(\)](#), [parameters\\_setup\(\)](#), [parent\\_get\(\)](#), [progress\\_init\(\)](#), [progress\\_read\(\)](#), [progress\\_reset\(\)](#), [progress\\_save\(\)](#), [rank\\_get\(\)](#), [rawseqrec\\_breakdown\(\)](#), [safely\\_connect\(\)](#), [search\\_and\\_cache\(\)](#), [searchterm\\_gen\(\)](#), [seeds\\_blast\(\)](#), [seq\\_download\(\)](#), [seqarc\\_gen\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_augment\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_convert\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_gen\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_get\(\)](#), [sids\\_check\(\)](#), [sids\\_get\(\)](#), [sids\\_load\(\)](#), [sids\\_save\(\)](#), [sqs\\_count\(\)](#), [sqs\\_save\(\)](#), [stage\\_args\\_check\(\)](#), [stages\\_run\(\)](#), [tax\\_download\(\)](#), [taxdict\\_gen\(\)](#), [taxtree\\_gen\(\)](#), [txids\\_get\(\)](#), [txnds\\_count\(\)](#), [warn\(\)](#)

---

clstrs\_calc

*Calculate clusters for all sequences in wd*


---

**Description**

Loop through downloaded sequences for each clade and hierarchically find clusters using BLAST.

**Usage**

```
clstrs_calc(txdict, ps)
```

**Arguments**

txdict	Taxonomic dictionary
ps	Parameters list, generated with parameters()

**See Also**

Other run-private: [batcher\(\)](#), [blast\\_clstr\(\)](#), [blast\\_filter\(\)](#), [blast\\_setup\(\)](#), [blast\\_sqs\(\)](#), [blastcache\\_load\(\)](#), [blastcache\\_save\(\)](#), [blastdb\\_gen\(\)](#), [blastn\\_run\(\)](#), [cache\\_rm\(\)](#), [cache\\_setup\(\)](#), [clade\\_select\(\)](#), [clstr2\\_calc\(\)](#), [clstr\\_all\(\)](#), [clstr\\_direct\(\)](#), [clstr\\_sqs\(\)](#), [clstr\\_subtree\(\)](#), [clstrarc\\_gen\(\)](#), [clstrarc\\_join\(\)](#), [clstrrec\\_gen\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_join\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_merge\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_renumber\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_save\(\)](#), [cmdln\(\)](#), [descendants\\_get\(\)](#), [download\\_obj\\_check\(\)](#), [error\(\)](#), [gb\\_extract\(\)](#), [hierarchic\\_download\(\)](#), [info\(\)](#), [ncbocache\\_load\(\)](#), [ncbocache\\_save\(\)](#), [obj\\_check\(\)](#), [obj\\_load\(\)](#), [obj\\_save\(\)](#), [outfmt\\_get\(\)](#), [parameters\\_load\(\)](#), [parameters\\_setup\(\)](#), [parent\\_get\(\)](#), [progress\\_init\(\)](#), [progress\\_read\(\)](#), [progress\\_reset\(\)](#), [progress\\_save\(\)](#), [rank\\_get\(\)](#), [rawseqrec\\_breakdown\(\)](#), [safely\\_connect\(\)](#), [search\\_and\\_cache\(\)](#), [searchterm\\_gen\(\)](#), [seeds\\_blast\(\)](#), [seq\\_download\(\)](#), [seqarc\\_gen\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_augment\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_convert\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_gen\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_get\(\)](#), [sids\\_check\(\)](#), [sids\\_get\(\)](#), [sids\\_load\(\)](#), [sids\\_save\(\)](#), [sqs\\_count\(\)](#), [sqs\\_save\(\)](#), [stage\\_args\\_check\(\)](#), [stages\\_run\(\)](#), [tax\\_download\(\)](#), [taxdict\\_gen\(\)](#), [taxtree\\_gen\(\)](#), [txids\\_get\(\)](#), [txnds\\_count\(\)](#), [warn\(\)](#)

---

clstrs_join	<i>Join clusters for merging</i>
-------------	----------------------------------

---

**Description**

Uses seed sequence BLAST results and IDs to join clusters identified as sisters into single clusters. Resulting object is of joined clusters, merging is required to reformat the clusters for subsequent analysis.

**Usage**

```
clstrs_join(blast_res, seed_ids, all_clstrs, ps)
```

**Arguments**

blast_res	Seed sequence BLAST results
seed_ids	Seed sequence IDs
all_clstrs	List of all clusters
ps	Parameters list, generated with parameters()

**Value**

list of joined clusters

**See Also**

Other run-private: [batcher\(\)](#), [blast\\_clstr\(\)](#), [blast\\_filter\(\)](#), [blast\\_setup\(\)](#), [blast\\_sqs\(\)](#), [blastcache\\_load\(\)](#), [blastcache\\_save\(\)](#), [blastdb\\_gen\(\)](#), [blastn\\_run\(\)](#), [cache\\_rm\(\)](#), [cache\\_setup\(\)](#), [clade\\_select\(\)](#), [clstr2\\_calc\(\)](#), [clstr\\_all\(\)](#), [clstr\\_direct\(\)](#), [clstr\\_sqs\(\)](#), [clstr\\_subtree\(\)](#), [clstrarc\\_gen\(\)](#), [clstrarc\\_join\(\)](#), [clstrrec\\_gen\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_calc\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_merge\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_renumber\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_save\(\)](#), [cmdln\(\)](#), [descendants\\_get\(\)](#), [download\\_obj\\_check\(\)](#), [error\(\)](#), [gb\\_extract\(\)](#), [hierarchic\\_download\(\)](#), [info\(\)](#), [ncbocache\\_load\(\)](#), [ncbocache\\_save\(\)](#), [obj\\_check\(\)](#), [obj\\_load\(\)](#), [obj\\_save\(\)](#), [outfmt\\_get\(\)](#), [parameters\\_load\(\)](#), [parameters\\_setup\(\)](#), [parent\\_get\(\)](#), [progress\\_init\(\)](#), [progress\\_read\(\)](#), [progress\\_reset\(\)](#), [progress\\_save\(\)](#), [rank\\_get\(\)](#), [rawseqrec\\_breakdown\(\)](#), [safely\\_connect\(\)](#), [search\\_and\\_cache\(\)](#), [searchterm\\_gen\(\)](#), [seeds\\_blast\(\)](#), [seq\\_download\(\)](#), [seqarc\\_gen\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_augment\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_convert\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_gen\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_get\(\)](#), [sids\\_check\(\)](#), [sids\\_get\(\)](#), [sids\\_load\(\)](#), [sids\\_save\(\)](#), [sqs\\_count\(\)](#), [sqs\\_save\(\)](#), [stage\\_args\\_check\(\)](#), [stages\\_run\(\)](#), [tax\\_download\(\)](#), [taxdict\\_gen\(\)](#), [taxtree\\_gen\(\)](#), [txids\\_get\(\)](#), [txnds\\_count\(\)](#), [warn\(\)](#)

---

clstrs_merge	<i>Merge joined clusters</i>
--------------	------------------------------

---

**Description**

Takes a list of joined clusters and computes each data slot to create a single merged cluster. txdct is required for parent look-up.

**Usage**

```
clstrs_merge(jnd_clstrs, txdct)
```

**Arguments**

jnd_clstrs	List of joined clusters
txdct	Taxonomic dictionary

**Value**

list of ClstrRecs

**See Also**

Other run-private: [batcher\(\)](#), [blast\\_clstr\(\)](#), [blast\\_filter\(\)](#), [blast\\_setup\(\)](#), [blast\\_sqc\(\)](#), [blastcache\\_load\(\)](#), [blastcache\\_save\(\)](#), [blastdb\\_gen\(\)](#), [blastn\\_run\(\)](#), [cache\\_rm\(\)](#), [cache\\_setup\(\)](#), [clade\\_select\(\)](#), [clstr2\\_calc\(\)](#), [clstr\\_all\(\)](#), [clstr\\_direct\(\)](#), [clstr\\_sqc\(\)](#), [clstr\\_subtree\(\)](#), [clstrarc\\_gen\(\)](#), [clstrarc\\_join\(\)](#), [clstrrec\\_gen\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_calc\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_join\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_renumber\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_save\(\)](#), [cmdln\(\)](#), [descendants\\_get\(\)](#), [download\\_obj\\_check\(\)](#), [error\(\)](#), [gb\\_extract\(\)](#), [hierarchic\\_download\(\)](#), [info\(\)](#), [ncbocache\\_load\(\)](#), [ncbocache\\_save\(\)](#), [obj\\_check\(\)](#), [obj\\_load\(\)](#), [obj\\_save\(\)](#), [outfmt\\_get\(\)](#), [parameters\\_load\(\)](#), [parameters\\_setup\(\)](#), [parent\\_get\(\)](#), [progress\\_init\(\)](#), [progress\\_read\(\)](#), [progress\\_reset\(\)](#), [progress\\_save\(\)](#), [rank\\_get\(\)](#), [rawseqrec\\_breakdown\(\)](#), [safely\\_connect\(\)](#), [search\\_and\\_cache\(\)](#), [searchterm\\_gen\(\)](#), [seeds\\_blast\(\)](#), [seq\\_download\(\)](#), [seqarc\\_gen\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_augment\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_convert\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_gen\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_get\(\)](#), [sids\\_check\(\)](#), [sids\\_get\(\)](#), [sids\\_load\(\)](#), [sids\\_save\(\)](#), [sqc\\_count\(\)](#), [sqc\\_save\(\)](#), [stage\\_args\\_check\(\)](#), [stages\\_run\(\)](#), [tax\\_download\(\)](#), [taxdict\\_gen\(\)](#), [taxtree\\_gen\(\)](#), [txids\\_get\(\)](#), [txnds\\_count\(\)](#), [warn\(\)](#)

---

clstrs_renumber	<i>Renumber cluster IDs</i>
-----------------	-----------------------------

---

**Description**

Returns a ClstrArc with ID determined by the number of sequences in each cluster.

**Usage**

```
clstrs_renumber(clstrrecs)
```



**Arguments**

clstrrecs      List of clusters

**Value**

ClstrArc

**See Also**

Other run-private: [batcher\(\)](#), [blast\\_clstr\(\)](#), [blast\\_filter\(\)](#), [blast\\_setup\(\)](#), [blast\\_sqsc\(\)](#), [blastcache\\_load\(\)](#), [blastcache\\_save\(\)](#), [blastdb\\_gen\(\)](#), [blastn\\_run\(\)](#), [cache\\_rm\(\)](#), [cache\\_setup\(\)](#), [clade\\_select\(\)](#), [clstr2\\_calc\(\)](#), [clstr\\_all\(\)](#), [clstr\\_direct\(\)](#), [clstr\\_sqsc\(\)](#), [clstr\\_subtree\(\)](#), [clstrarc\\_gen\(\)](#), [clstrarc\\_join\(\)](#), [clstrrec\\_gen\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_calc\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_join\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_merge\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_save\(\)](#), [cmdln\(\)](#), [descendants\\_get\(\)](#), [download\\_obj\\_check\(\)](#), [error\(\)](#), [gb\\_extract\(\)](#), [hierarchic\\_download\(\)](#), [info\(\)](#), [ncbocache\\_load\(\)](#), [ncbocache\\_save\(\)](#), [obj\\_check\(\)](#), [obj\\_load\(\)](#), [obj\\_save\(\)](#), [outfmt\\_get\(\)](#), [parameters\\_load\(\)](#), [parameters\\_setup\(\)](#), [parent\\_get\(\)](#), [progress\\_init\(\)](#), [progress\\_read\(\)](#), [progress\\_reset\(\)](#), [progress\\_save\(\)](#), [rank\\_get\(\)](#), [rawseqrec\\_breakdown\(\)](#), [safely\\_connect\(\)](#), [search\\_and\\_cache\(\)](#), [searchterm\\_gen\(\)](#), [seeds\\_blast\(\)](#), [seq\\_download\(\)](#), [seqarc\\_gen\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_augment\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_convert\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_gen\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_get\(\)](#), [sids\\_check\(\)](#), [sids\\_get\(\)](#), [sids\\_load\(\)](#), [sids\\_save\(\)](#), [sqsc\\_count\(\)](#), [sqsc\\_save\(\)](#), [stage\\_args\\_check\(\)](#), [stages\\_run\(\)](#), [tax\\_download\(\)](#), [taxdict\\_gen\(\)](#), [taxtree\\_gen\(\)](#), [txids\\_get\(\)](#), [txnds\\_count\(\)](#), [warn\(\)](#)

---

clstrs_save	<i>Save clusters to cache</i>
-------------	-------------------------------

---

**Description**

Saves clusters generated by `clstr_all` to cache.

**Usage**

```
clstrs_save(wd, txid, clstrs)
```

**Arguments**

wd              Working directory  
txid             Taxonomic ID, numeric  
clstrs          cluster list

**See Also**

Other run-private: [batcher\(\)](#), [blast\\_clstr\(\)](#), [blast\\_filter\(\)](#), [blast\\_setup\(\)](#), [blast\\_sqsc\(\)](#), [blastcache\\_load\(\)](#), [blastcache\\_save\(\)](#), [blastdb\\_gen\(\)](#), [blastn\\_run\(\)](#), [cache\\_rm\(\)](#), [cache\\_setup\(\)](#), [clade\\_select\(\)](#), [clstr2\\_calc\(\)](#), [clstr\\_all\(\)](#), [clstr\\_direct\(\)](#), [clstr\\_sqsc\(\)](#), [clstr\\_subtree\(\)](#), [clstrarc\\_gen\(\)](#), [clstrarc\\_join\(\)](#), [clstrrec\\_gen\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_calc\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_join\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_merge\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_renumber\(\)](#), [cmdln\(\)](#), [descendants\\_get\(\)](#), [download\\_obj\\_check\(\)](#), [error\(\)](#), [gb\\_extract\(\)](#), [hierarchic\\_download\(\)](#), [info\(\)](#), [ncbocache\\_load\(\)](#), [ncbocache\\_save\(\)](#), [obj\\_check\(\)](#), [obj\\_load\(\)](#),

obj\_save(), outfmt\_get(), parameters\_load(), parameters\_setup(), parent\_get(), progress\_init(), progress\_read(), progress\_reset(), progress\_save(), rank\_get(), rawseqrec\_breakdown(), safely\_connect(), search\_and\_cache(), searchterm\_gen(), seeds\_blast(), seq\_download(), seqarc\_gen(), seqrec\_augment(), seqrec\_convert(), seqrec\_gen(), seqrec\_get(), sids\_check(), sids\_get(), sids\_load(), sids\_save(), sqs\_count(), sqs\_save(), stage\_args\_check(), stages\_run(), tax\_download(), taxdict\_gen(), taxtree\_gen(), txids\_get(), txnds\_count(), warn()

---

clstr\_all

*Hierarchically cluster all sequences of a txid*

---

### Description

Identifies all direct and subtree clusters for a taxonomic ID.

### Usage

```
clstr_all(txid, sqs, txdct, ps, lvl = 0)
```

### Arguments

txid	Taxonomic ID
sqs	Sequence object of all downloaded sequences
txdct	Taxonomic dictionary
ps	Parameters list, generated with parameters()
lvl	Integer, number of message indentations indicating code depth.

### Value

ClstrArc

### See Also

Other run-private: [batcher\(\)](#), [blast\\_clstr\(\)](#), [blast\\_filter\(\)](#), [blast\\_setup\(\)](#), [blast\\_sqs\(\)](#), [blastcache\\_load\(\)](#), [blastcache\\_save\(\)](#), [blastdb\\_gen\(\)](#), [blastn\\_run\(\)](#), [cache\\_rm\(\)](#), [cache\\_setup\(\)](#), [clade\\_select\(\)](#), [clstr2\\_calc\(\)](#), [clstr\\_direct\(\)](#), [clstr\\_sqs\(\)](#), [clstr\\_subtree\(\)](#), [clstrarc\\_gen\(\)](#), [clstrarc\\_join\(\)](#), [clstrrec\\_gen\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_calc\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_join\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_merge\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_renumber\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_save\(\)](#), [cmdln\(\)](#), [descendants\\_get\(\)](#), [download\\_obj\\_check\(\)](#), [error\(\)](#), [gb\\_extract\(\)](#), [hierarchic\\_download\(\)](#), [info\(\)](#), [ncbocache\\_load\(\)](#), [ncbocache\\_save\(\)](#), [obj\\_check\(\)](#), [obj\\_load\(\)](#), [obj\\_save\(\)](#), [outfmt\\_get\(\)](#), [parameters\\_load\(\)](#), [parameters\\_setup\(\)](#), [parent\\_get\(\)](#), [progress\\_init\(\)](#), [progress\\_read\(\)](#), [progress\\_reset\(\)](#), [progress\\_save\(\)](#), [rank\\_get\(\)](#), [rawseqrec\\_breakdown\(\)](#), [safely\\_connect\(\)](#), [search\\_and\\_cache\(\)](#), [searchterm\\_gen\(\)](#), [seeds\\_blast\(\)](#), [seq\\_download\(\)](#), [seqarc\\_gen\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_augment\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_convert\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_gen\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_get\(\)](#), [sids\\_check\(\)](#), [sids\\_get\(\)](#), [sids\\_load\(\)](#), [sids\\_save\(\)](#), [sqs\\_count\(\)](#), [sqs\\_save\(\)](#), [stage\\_args\\_check\(\)](#), [stages\\_run\(\)](#), [tax\\_download\(\)](#), [taxdict\\_gen\(\)](#), [taxtree\\_gen\(\)](#), [txids\\_get\(\)](#), [txnds\\_count\(\)](#), [warn\(\)](#)

---

clstr\_direct

*Cluster sequences directly associated with txid*


---

## Description

In GenBank certain sequences may only be associated with a higher level taxon (e.g. genus, family ...). This function generates clusters from these sequences, alone. This function identifies such sequences in the sequence object and generates a list of clusters of cl\_type 'direct'.

## Usage

```
clstr_direct(txid, sqs, txdct, ps, lvl)
```

## Arguments

txid	Taxonomic ID
sqs	Sequence object of all downloaded sequences
txdct	Taxonomic dictionary
ps	Parameters list, generated with parameters()
lvl	Integer, number of message indentations indicating code depth.

## Value

ClstrArc

## See Also

Other run-private: [batcher\(\)](#), [blast\\_clstr\(\)](#), [blast\\_filter\(\)](#), [blast\\_setup\(\)](#), [blast\\_sqs\(\)](#), [blastcache\\_load\(\)](#), [blastcache\\_save\(\)](#), [blastdb\\_gen\(\)](#), [blastn\\_run\(\)](#), [cache\\_rm\(\)](#), [cache\\_setup\(\)](#), [clade\\_select\(\)](#), [clstr2\\_calc\(\)](#), [clstr\\_all\(\)](#), [clstr\\_sqs\(\)](#), [clstr\\_subtree\(\)](#), [clstrarc\\_gen\(\)](#), [clstrarc\\_join\(\)](#), [clstrrec\\_gen\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_calc\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_join\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_merge\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_renumber\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_save\(\)](#), [cmdln\(\)](#), [descendants\\_get\(\)](#), [download\\_obj\\_check\(\)](#), [error\(\)](#), [gb\\_extract\(\)](#), [hierarchic\\_download\(\)](#), [info\(\)](#), [ncbocache\\_load\(\)](#), [ncbocache\\_save\(\)](#), [obj\\_check\(\)](#), [obj\\_load\(\)](#), [obj\\_save\(\)](#), [outfmt\\_get\(\)](#), [parameters\\_load\(\)](#), [parameters\\_setup\(\)](#), [parent\\_get\(\)](#), [progress\\_init\(\)](#), [progress\\_read\(\)](#), [progress\\_reset\(\)](#), [progress\\_save\(\)](#), [rank\\_get\(\)](#), [rawseqrec\\_breakdown\(\)](#), [safely\\_connect\(\)](#), [search\\_and\\_cache\(\)](#), [searchterm\\_gen\(\)](#), [seeds\\_blast\(\)](#), [seq\\_download\(\)](#), [seqarc\\_gen\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_augment\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_convert\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_gen\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_get\(\)](#), [sids\\_check\(\)](#), [sids\\_get\(\)](#), [sids\\_load\(\)](#), [sids\\_save\(\)](#), [sqs\\_count\(\)](#), [sqs\\_save\(\)](#), [stage\\_args\\_check\(\)](#), [stages\\_run\(\)](#), [tax\\_download\(\)](#), [taxdict\\_gen\(\)](#), [taxtree\\_gen\(\)](#), [txids\\_get\(\)](#), [txnds\\_count\(\)](#), [warn\(\)](#)

---

clstr_sqs	<i>Identify clusters from sequences</i>
-----------	---

---

**Description**

Given a sequence object, this function will generate a list of cluster objects using BLAST

**Usage**

```
clstr_sqs(txid, sqs, ps, lvl, typ = c("direct", "subtree", "paraphyly"))
```

**Arguments**

txid	Taxonomic ID
sqs	Sequence object of sequences to be BLASTed
ps	Parameters list, generated with parameters()
lvl	Integer, number of message indentations indicating code depth.
typ	Direct, subtree or paraphyly?

**See Also**

Other run-private: [batcher\(\)](#), [blast\\_clstr\(\)](#), [blast\\_filter\(\)](#), [blast\\_setup\(\)](#), [blast\\_sqs\(\)](#), [blastcache\\_load\(\)](#), [blastcache\\_save\(\)](#), [blastdb\\_gen\(\)](#), [blastn\\_run\(\)](#), [cache\\_rm\(\)](#), [cache\\_setup\(\)](#), [clade\\_select\(\)](#), [clstr2\\_calc\(\)](#), [clstr\\_all\(\)](#), [clstr\\_direct\(\)](#), [clstr\\_subtree\(\)](#), [clstrarc\\_gen\(\)](#), [clstrarc\\_join\(\)](#), [clstrrec\\_gen\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_calc\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_join\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_merge\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_renumber\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_save\(\)](#), [cmdln\(\)](#), [descendants\\_get\(\)](#), [download\\_obj\\_check\(\)](#), [error\(\)](#), [gb\\_extract\(\)](#), [hierarchic\\_download\(\)](#), [info\(\)](#), [ncbocache\\_load\(\)](#), [ncbocache\\_save\(\)](#), [obj\\_check\(\)](#), [obj\\_load\(\)](#), [obj\\_save\(\)](#), [outfmt\\_get\(\)](#), [parameters\\_load\(\)](#), [parameters\\_setup\(\)](#), [parent\\_get\(\)](#), [progress\\_init\(\)](#), [progress\\_read\(\)](#), [progress\\_reset\(\)](#), [progress\\_save\(\)](#), [rank\\_get\(\)](#), [rawseqrec\\_breakdown\(\)](#), [safely\\_connect\(\)](#), [search\\_and\\_cache\(\)](#), [searchterm\\_gen\(\)](#), [seeds\\_blast\(\)](#), [seq\\_download\(\)](#), [seqarc\\_gen\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_augment\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_convert\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_gen\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_get\(\)](#), [sids\\_check\(\)](#), [sids\\_get\(\)](#), [sids\\_load\(\)](#), [sids\\_save\(\)](#), [sqs\\_count\(\)](#), [sqs\\_save\(\)](#), [stage\\_args\\_check\(\)](#), [stages\\_run\(\)](#), [tax\\_download\(\)](#), [taxdict\\_gen\(\)](#), [taxtree\\_gen\(\)](#), [txids\\_get\(\)](#), [txnds\\_count\(\)](#), [warn\(\)](#)

---

clstr_subtree	<i>Cluster all sequences descending from a txid</i>
---------------	---

---

**Description**

Identifies clusters from sequences associated with a txid and all its descendants. Clusters returned by this function will thus be of cl\_type 'subtree'.

**Usage**

```
clstr_subtree(txid, sqs, txdct, dds, ps, lvl)
```

**Arguments**

txid	Taxonomic ID
sqs	Sequence object of all downloaded sequences
txdct	Taxonomic dictionary
dds	Vector of direct descendants
ps	Parameters list, generated with parameters()
lvl	Integer, number of message indentations indicating code depth.

**Value**

ClstrArc

**See Also**

Other run-private: [batcher\(\)](#), [blast\\_clstr\(\)](#), [blast\\_filter\(\)](#), [blast\\_setup\(\)](#), [blast\\_sqs\(\)](#), [blastcache\\_load\(\)](#), [blastcache\\_save\(\)](#), [blastdb\\_gen\(\)](#), [blastn\\_run\(\)](#), [cache\\_rm\(\)](#), [cache\\_setup\(\)](#), [clade\\_select\(\)](#), [clstr2\\_calc\(\)](#), [clstr\\_all\(\)](#), [clstr\\_direct\(\)](#), [clstr\\_sqs\(\)](#), [clstrarc\\_gen\(\)](#), [clstrarc\\_join\(\)](#), [clstrrec\\_gen\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_calc\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_join\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_merge\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_renumber\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_save\(\)](#), [cmdln\(\)](#), [descendants\\_get\(\)](#), [download\\_obj\\_check\(\)](#), [error\(\)](#), [gb\\_extract\(\)](#), [hierarchic\\_download\(\)](#), [info\(\)](#), [ncbicare\\_load\(\)](#), [ncbicare\\_save\(\)](#), [obj\\_check\(\)](#), [obj\\_load\(\)](#), [obj\\_save\(\)](#), [outfmt\\_get\(\)](#), [parameters\\_load\(\)](#), [parameters\\_setup\(\)](#), [parent\\_get\(\)](#), [progress\\_init\(\)](#), [progress\\_read\(\)](#), [progress\\_reset\(\)](#), [progress\\_save\(\)](#), [rank\\_get\(\)](#), [rawseqrec\\_breakdown\(\)](#), [safely\\_connect\(\)](#), [search\\_and\\_cache\(\)](#), [searchterm\\_gen\(\)](#), [seeds\\_blast\(\)](#), [seq\\_download\(\)](#), [seqarc\\_gen\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_augment\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_convert\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_gen\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_get\(\)](#), [sids\\_check\(\)](#), [sids\\_get\(\)](#), [sids\\_load\(\)](#), [sids\\_save\(\)](#), [sqs\\_count\(\)](#), [sqs\\_save\(\)](#), [stage\\_args\\_check\(\)](#), [stages\\_run\(\)](#), [tax\\_download\(\)](#), [taxdict\\_gen\(\)](#), [taxtree\\_gen\(\)](#), [txids\\_get\(\)](#), [txnds\\_count\(\)](#), [warn\(\)](#)

---

clusters2_run	<i>Run the cluster2 stage</i>
---------------	-------------------------------

---

**Description**

Run the fourth stage of the phylotaR pipeline, cluster2. Identify clusters at higher taxonomic levels by merging sister clusters.

**Usage**

```
clusters2_run(wd)
```

**Arguments**

wd	Working directory
----	-------------------

**See Also**

Other run-public: [ClstrArc-class](#), [ClstrRec-class](#), [Phylota-class](#), [SeqArc-class](#), [SeqRec-class](#), [TaxDict-class](#), [TaxRec-class](#), [clusters\\_run\(\)](#), [parameters\\_reset\(\)](#), [reset\(\)](#), [restart\(\)](#), [run\(\)](#), [setup\(\)](#), [taxise\\_run\(\)](#)

**Examples**

```
## Not run:

# Note: this example requires BLAST and internet to run.

# example with temp folder
wd <- file.path(tempdir(), 'aotus')
# setup for aotus, make sure aotus/ folder already exists
if (!dir.exists(wd)) {
  dir.create(wd)
}
ncbi_dr <- '[SET BLAST+ BIN PATH HERE]'
setup(wd = wd, txid = 9504, ncbi_dr = ncbi_dr) # txid for Aotus primate genus
# individually run stages
taxise_run(wd = wd)
download_run(wd = wd)
clusters_run(wd = wd)
clusters2_run(wd = wd)

## End(Not run)
```

---

clusters\_run

*Run the cluster stage*


---

**Description**

Run the third stage of the phylotaR pipeline, cluster. This stage hierarchically traverses the taxonomy identifying all direct and subtree clusters from downloaded sequences. Any taxonomic nodes too small for cluster identification are placed into paraphyletic clusters.

**Usage**

```
clusters_run(wd)
```

**Arguments**

```
wd           Working directory
```

**See Also**

Other run-public: [ClstrArc-class](#), [ClstrRec-class](#), [Phylota-class](#), [SeqArc-class](#), [SeqRec-class](#), [TaxDict-class](#), [TaxRec-class](#), [clusters2\\_run\(\)](#), [parameters\\_reset\(\)](#), [reset\(\)](#), [restart\(\)](#), [run\(\)](#), [setup\(\)](#), [taxise\\_run\(\)](#)

**Examples**

```
## Not run:

# Note: this example requires BLAST and internet to run.

# example with temp folder
wd <- file.path(tempdir(), 'aotus')
# setup for aotus, make sure aotus/ folder already exists
if (!dir.exists(wd)) {
  dir.create(wd)
}
ncbi_dr <- '[SET BLAST+ BIN PATH HERE]'
setup(wd = wd, txid = 9504, ncbi_dr = ncbi_dr) # txid for Aotus primate genus
# individually run stages
taxise_run(wd = wd)
download_run(wd = wd)
clusters_run(wd = wd)

## End(Not run)
```

---

cmdln

*Run a command via terminal/command prompt*


---

**Description**

Provide the command and arguments as a vector. Also can take a lgfl to which all stdout and stderr is written. If lgfl is not provided, a list is returned of 'status', 'stdout' and 'stderr'. Else only the status is returned - 1 success, 0 failed.

**Usage**

```
cmdln(cmd, args, ps, lgfl = NULL)
```

**Arguments**

cmd	Command to be run
args	Vector of command arguments, each parameter and value must be a separate element
ps	Parameters
lgfl	File to which stdout/err will be written

**Details**

Note, stdout/err are returned as 'raw'. Use rawToChar() to convert to characters.

**Value**

status, integer or character

**See Also**

Other run-private: [batcher\(\)](#), [blast\\_clstr\(\)](#), [blast\\_filter\(\)](#), [blast\\_setup\(\)](#), [blast\\_sqs\(\)](#), [blastcache\\_load\(\)](#), [blastcache\\_save\(\)](#), [blastdb\\_gen\(\)](#), [blastn\\_run\(\)](#), [cache\\_rm\(\)](#), [cache\\_setup\(\)](#), [clade\\_select\(\)](#), [clstr2\\_calc\(\)](#), [clstr\\_all\(\)](#), [clstr\\_direct\(\)](#), [clstr\\_sqs\(\)](#), [clstr\\_subtree\(\)](#), [clstrarc\\_gen\(\)](#), [clstrarc\\_join\(\)](#), [clstrrec\\_gen\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_calc\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_join\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_merge\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_renumber\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_save\(\)](#), [descendants\\_get\(\)](#), [download\\_obj\\_check\(\)](#), [error\(\)](#), [gb\\_extract\(\)](#), [hierarchic\\_download\(\)](#), [info\(\)](#), [ncbocache\\_load\(\)](#), [ncbocache\\_save\(\)](#), [obj\\_check\(\)](#), [obj\\_load\(\)](#), [obj\\_save\(\)](#), [outfmt\\_get\(\)](#), [parameters\\_load\(\)](#), [parameters\\_setup\(\)](#), [parent\\_get\(\)](#), [progress\\_init\(\)](#), [progress\\_read\(\)](#), [progress\\_reset\(\)](#), [progress\\_save\(\)](#), [rank\\_get\(\)](#), [rawseqrec\\_breakdown\(\)](#), [safely\\_connect\(\)](#), [search\\_and\\_cache\(\)](#), [searchterm\\_gen\(\)](#), [seeds\\_blast\(\)](#), [seq\\_download\(\)](#), [seqarc\\_gen\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_augment\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_convert\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_gen\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_get\(\)](#), [sids\\_check\(\)](#), [sids\\_get\(\)](#), [sids\\_load\(\)](#), [sids\\_save\(\)](#), [sqs\\_count\(\)](#), [sqs\\_save\(\)](#), [stage\\_args\\_check\(\)](#), [stages\\_run\(\)](#), [tax\\_download\(\)](#), [taxdict\\_gen\(\)](#), [taxtree\\_gen\(\)](#), [txids\\_get\(\)](#), [txnds\\_count\(\)](#), [warn\(\)](#)

---

cTrees

*cTrees*


---

**Description**

Return TreeMen of concatenated trees.

**Usage**

```
cTrees(x, ...)
```

**Arguments**

x	TreeMan or TreeMen objects
...	more TreeMan or TreeMen objects

**Details**

Concatenate trees into single TreeMen object.

**See Also**

[TreeMen-class](#), [TreeMan-class](#), [list-to-TreeMen](#)

**Examples**

```
trees <- cTrees(randTree(10), randTree(10))
```



---

cycads	<i>cycads</i>
--------	---------------

---

**Description**

cycads

**Format**

A TreeMan or Phylota object

**Examples**

```
data("cycads")
```

---

descendants_get	<i>Get descendants</i>
-----------------	------------------------

---

**Description**

Look-up either direct or all taxonomic descendants of a node from taxonomic dictionary.

**Usage**

```
descendants_get(id, txdct, direct = FALSE)
```

**Arguments**

id	txid
txdct	TaxDict
direct	T/F, return only direct descendants?

**Value**

vector

**See Also**

Other run-private: [batcher\(\)](#), [blast\\_clstr\(\)](#), [blast\\_filter\(\)](#), [blast\\_setup\(\)](#), [blast\\_sqz\(\)](#), [blastcache\\_load\(\)](#), [blastcache\\_save\(\)](#), [blastdb\\_gen\(\)](#), [blastn\\_run\(\)](#), [cache\\_rm\(\)](#), [cache\\_setup\(\)](#), [clade\\_select\(\)](#), [clstr2\\_calc\(\)](#), [clstr\\_all\(\)](#), [clstr\\_direct\(\)](#), [clstr\\_sqz\(\)](#), [clstr\\_subtree\(\)](#), [clstrarc\\_gen\(\)](#), [clstrarc\\_join\(\)](#), [clstrrec\\_gen\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_calc\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_join\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_merge\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_renumber\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_save\(\)](#), [cmdln\(\)](#), [download\\_obj\\_check\(\)](#), [error\(\)](#), [gb\\_extract\(\)](#), [hierarchic\\_download\(\)](#), [info\(\)](#), [ncbocache\\_load\(\)](#), [ncbocache\\_save\(\)](#), [obj\\_check\(\)](#), [obj\\_load\(\)](#), [obj\\_save\(\)](#), [outfmt\\_get\(\)](#), [parameters\\_load\(\)](#), [parameters\\_setup\(\)](#), [parent\\_get\(\)](#), [progress\\_init\(\)](#),

progress\_read(), progress\_reset(), progress\_save(), rank\_get(), rawseqrec\_breakdown(), safely\_connect(), search\_and\_cache(), searchterm\_gen(), seeds\_blast(), seq\_download(), seqarc\_gen(), seqrec\_augment(), seqrec\_convert(), seqrec\_gen(), seqrec\_get(), sids\_check(), sids\_get(), sids\_load(), sids\_save(), sqs\_count(), sqs\_save(), stage\_args\_check(), stages\_run(), tax\_download(), taxdict\_gen(), taxtree\_gen(), txids\_get(), txnds\_count(), warn()

---

download\_obj\_check      *Check an object returned from rentrez function*

---

### Description

Returns T/F. Checks if object returned from rentrez function is as expected.

### Usage

```
download_obj_check(obj)
```

### Arguments

obj                      Object returned from rentrez function

### Value

T/F

### See Also

Other run-private: [batcher\(\)](#), [blast\\_clstr\(\)](#), [blast\\_filter\(\)](#), [blast\\_setup\(\)](#), [blast\\_sqs\(\)](#), [blastcache\\_load\(\)](#), [blastcache\\_save\(\)](#), [blastdb\\_gen\(\)](#), [blastn\\_run\(\)](#), [cache\\_rm\(\)](#), [cache\\_setup\(\)](#), [clade\\_select\(\)](#), [clstr2\\_calc\(\)](#), [clstr\\_all\(\)](#), [clstr\\_direct\(\)](#), [clstr\\_sqs\(\)](#), [clstr\\_subtree\(\)](#), [clstrarc\\_gen\(\)](#), [clstrarc\\_join\(\)](#), [clstrrec\\_gen\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_calc\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_join\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_merge\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_renumber\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_save\(\)](#), [cmdln\(\)](#), [descendants\\_get\(\)](#), [error\(\)](#), [gb\\_extract\(\)](#), [hierarchic\\_download\(\)](#), [info\(\)](#), [ncbocache\\_load\(\)](#), [ncbocache\\_save\(\)](#), [obj\\_check\(\)](#), [obj\\_load\(\)](#), [obj\\_save\(\)](#), [outfmt\\_get\(\)](#), [parameters\\_load\(\)](#), [parameters\\_setup\(\)](#), [parent\\_get\(\)](#), [progress\\_init\(\)](#), [progress\\_read\(\)](#), [progress\\_reset\(\)](#), [progress\\_save\(\)](#), [rank\\_get\(\)](#), [rawseqrec\\_breakdown\(\)](#), [safely\\_connect\(\)](#), [search\\_and\\_cache\(\)](#), [searchterm\\_gen\(\)](#), [seeds\\_blast\(\)](#), [seq\\_download\(\)](#), [seqarc\\_gen\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_augment\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_convert\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_gen\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_get\(\)](#), [sids\\_check\(\)](#), [sids\\_get\(\)](#), [sids\\_load\(\)](#), [sids\\_save\(\)](#), [sqs\\_count\(\)](#), [sqs\\_save\(\)](#), [stage\\_args\\_check\(\)](#), [stages\\_run\(\)](#), [tax\\_download\(\)](#), [taxdict\\_gen\(\)](#), [taxtree\\_gen\(\)](#), [txids\\_get\(\)](#), [txnds\\_count\(\)](#), [warn\(\)](#)

---

download_run	<i>Run download stage</i>
--------------	---------------------------

---

**Description**

Run the second stage of phylotaR, download. This stage downloads sequences for all nodes with sequence numbers less than mxsqs. It hierarchically traverses the taxonomy for each node and downloads direct and subtree sequences for all descendants.

**Usage**

```
download_run(wd)
```

**Arguments**

wd                    Working directory

**Examples**

```
## Not run:

# Note: this example requires BLAST and internet to run.

# example with temp folder
wd <- file.path(tempdir(), 'aotus')
# setup for aotus, make sure aotus/ folder already exists
if (!dir.exists(wd)) {
  dir.create(wd)
}
ncbi_dr <- '[SET BLAST+ BIN PATH HERE]'
setup(wd = wd, txid = 9504, ncbi_dr = ncbi_dr) # txid for Aotus primate genus
# individually run stages
taxise_run(wd = wd)
download_run(wd = wd)

## End(Not run)
```

---

dragonflies	<i>dragonflies</i>
-------------	--------------------

---

**Description**

dragonflies

**Format**

A TreeMan or Phylota object

**Examples**

```
data("dragonflies")
```

---

drop_by_rank	<i>Reduce clusters to specific rank</i>
--------------	---

---

**Description**

Identifies higher level taxa for each sequence in clusters for given rank. Selects representative sequences for each unique taxon using the choose\_by functions. By default, the function will choose the top ten sequences by first sorting by those with fewest number of ambiguous sequences, then by youngest, then by sequence length.

**Usage**

```
drop_by_rank(  
  phylota,  
  rnk = "species",  
  keep_higher = FALSE,  
  n = 10,  
  choose_by = c("pambgs", "age", "nncldts"),  
  greatest = c(FALSE, FALSE, TRUE)  
)
```

**Arguments**

phylota	Phylota object
rnk	Taxonomic rank
keep_higher	Keep higher taxonomic ranks?
n	Number of sequences per taxon
choose_by	Vector of selection functions
greatest	Greatest of lowest for each choose_by function

**Value**

phylota

**See Also**

Other tools-public: [calc\\_mad\(\)](#), [calc\\_wrdfrq\(\)](#), [drop\\_clstrs\(\)](#), [drop\\_sqs\(\)](#), [get\\_clstr\\_slot\(\)](#), [get\\_nsqs\(\)](#), [get\\_ntaxa\(\)](#), [get\\_sq\\_slot\(\)](#), [get\\_stage\\_times\(\)](#), [get\\_tx\\_slot\(\)](#), [get\\_txids\(\)](#), [is\\_txid\\_in\\_clstr\(\)](#), [is\\_txid\\_in\\_sq\(\)](#), [list\\_clstrrec\\_slots\(\)](#), [list\\_ncbi\\_ranks\(\)](#), [list\\_seqrec\\_slots\(\)](#), [list\\_taxrec\\_slots\(\)](#), [plot\\_phylota\\_pa\(\)](#), [plot\\_phylota\\_treemap\(\)](#), [read\\_phylota\(\)](#), [write\\_sqs\(\)](#)

**Examples**

```

data("dragonflies")
# For faster computations, let's only work with the 5 clusters.
dragonflies <- drop_clstrs(phyloata = dragonflies, cid = dragonflies@cids[10:15])

# We can use drop_by_rank() to reduce to 10 sequences per genus for each cluster
(reduced_1 <- drop_by_rank(phyloata = dragonflies, rnk = 'genus', n = 10,
                          choose_by = c('pambgs', 'age', 'nncltds'),
                          greatest = c(FALSE, FALSE, TRUE)))

# We can specify what aspects of the sequences we would like to select per genus
# By default we select the sequences with fewest ambiguous nucleotides (e.g.
# we avoid Ns), the youngest age and then longest sequence.
# We can reverse the 'greatest' to get the opposite.
(reduced_2 <- drop_by_rank(phyloata = dragonflies, rnk = 'genus', n = 10,
                          choose_by = c('pambgs', 'age', 'nncltds'),
                          greatest = c(TRUE, TRUE, FALSE)))

# Leading to smaller sequences ...
r1_sqlngh <- mean(get_sq_slot(phyloata = reduced_1,
                             sid = reduced_1@sids, slt_nm = 'nncltds'))
r2_sqlngh <- mean(get_sq_slot(phyloata = reduced_2,
                             sid = reduced_2@sids, slt_nm = 'nncltds'))

(r1_sqlngh > r2_sqlngh)
# ... with more ambiguous characters ...
r1_pambgs <- mean(get_sq_slot(phyloata = reduced_1, sid = reduced_1@sids,
                             slt_nm = 'pambgs'))
r2_pambgs <- mean(get_sq_slot(phyloata = reduced_2, sid = reduced_2@sids,
                             slt_nm = 'pambgs'))

(r1_pambgs < r2_pambgs)
# ... and older ages (measured in days since being added to GenBank).
r1_age <- mean(get_sq_slot(phyloata = reduced_1, sid = reduced_1@sids,
                          slt_nm = 'age'))
r2_age <- mean(get_sq_slot(phyloata = reduced_2, sid = reduced_2@sids,
                          slt_nm = 'age'))

(r1_age < r2_age)

# Or... we can simply reduce the clusters to just one sequence per genus
(dragonflies <- drop_by_rank(phyloata = dragonflies, rnk = 'genus', n = 1))

```

---

drop\_clstrs

*Drop cluster records from phyloata object*


---

**Description**

Drops all clusters except those identified by user.

**Usage**

```
drop_clstrs(phyloba, cid)
```

**Arguments**

phyloba	Phyloba object
cid	Cluster ID(s) to be kept

**Value**

phyloba

**See Also**

Other tools-public: [calc\\_mad\(\)](#), [calc\\_wrdfrq\(\)](#), [drop\\_by\\_rank\(\)](#), [drop\\_sqs\(\)](#), [get\\_clstr\\_slot\(\)](#), [get\\_nsqs\(\)](#), [get\\_ntaxa\(\)](#), [get\\_sq\\_slot\(\)](#), [get\\_stage\\_times\(\)](#), [get\\_tx\\_slot\(\)](#), [get\\_txids\(\)](#), [is\\_txid\\_in\\_clstr\(\)](#), [is\\_txid\\_in\\_sq\(\)](#), [list\\_clstrrec\\_slots\(\)](#), [list\\_ncbi\\_ranks\(\)](#), [list\\_seqrec\\_slots\(\)](#), [list\\_taxrec\\_slots\(\)](#), [plot\\_phyloba\\_pa\(\)](#), [plot\\_phyloba\\_treemap\(\)](#), [read\\_phyloba\(\)](#), [write\\_sqs\(\)](#)

**Examples**

```
data("dragonflies")
# specify cids to *keep*
random_cids <- sample(dragonflies@cids, 100)
# drop an entire cluster
nbefore <- length(dragonflies@cids)
dragonflies <- drop_clstrs(phyloba = dragonflies, cid = random_cids)
nafter <- length(dragonflies@cids)
# now there are only 100 clusters
(nafter < nbefore)
```

---

drop\_sqs

*Drop sequences in a cluster*

---

**Description**

Drop all sequences in a cluster except those identified by user.

**Usage**

```
drop_sqs(phyloba, cid, sid)
```

**Arguments**

phyloba	Phyloba object
cid	Cluster ID
sid	Sequence ID(s) to be kept

**Value**

phylota

**See Also**

Other tools-public: [calc\\_mad\(\)](#), [calc\\_wrdfreq\(\)](#), [drop\\_by\\_rank\(\)](#), [drop\\_clstrs\(\)](#), [get\\_clstr\\_slot\(\)](#), [get\\_nsqs\(\)](#), [get\\_ntaxa\(\)](#), [get\\_sq\\_slot\(\)](#), [get\\_stage\\_times\(\)](#), [get\\_tx\\_slot\(\)](#), [get\\_txids\(\)](#), [is\\_txid\\_in\\_clstr\(\)](#), [is\\_txid\\_in\\_sq\(\)](#), [list\\_clstrrec\\_slots\(\)](#), [list\\_ncbi\\_ranks\(\)](#), [list\\_seqrec\\_slots\(\)](#), [list\\_taxrec\\_slots\(\)](#), [plot\\_phylota\\_pa\(\)](#), [plot\\_phylota\\_treemap\(\)](#), [read\\_phylota\(\)](#), [write\\_sq\(\)](#)

**Examples**

```
data("dragonflies")
# drop random sequences from cluster 0
clstr <- dragonflies[['0']]
# specify the sids to *keep*
sids <- sample(clstr@sids, 100)
(dragonflies <- drop_sq(phylota = dragonflies, cid = '0', sid = sids))
# Note, sequences dropped may be represented in other clusters
```

---

error

*Write error message to log*

---

**Description**

Inform a user if an error has occurred in log.txt, halt pipeline.

**Usage**

```
error(ps, ...)
```

**Arguments**

ps                   Parameters list, generated with [parameters\(\)](#)  
 ...                   Message elements for concatenating

**See Also**

Other run-private: [batcher\(\)](#), [blast\\_clstr\(\)](#), [blast\\_filter\(\)](#), [blast\\_setup\(\)](#), [blast\\_sq\(\)](#), [blastcache\\_load\(\)](#), [blastcache\\_save\(\)](#), [blastdb\\_gen\(\)](#), [blastn\\_run\(\)](#), [cache\\_rm\(\)](#), [cache\\_setup\(\)](#), [clade\\_select\(\)](#), [clstr2\\_calc\(\)](#), [clstr\\_all\(\)](#), [clstr\\_direct\(\)](#), [clstr\\_sq\(\)](#), [clstr\\_subtree\(\)](#), [clstrarc\\_gen\(\)](#), [clstrarc\\_join\(\)](#), [clstrrec\\_gen\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_calc\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_join\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_merge\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_renumber\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_save\(\)](#), [cmdln\(\)](#), [descendants\\_get\(\)](#), [download\\_obj\\_check\(\)](#), [gb\\_extract\(\)](#), [hierarchic\\_download\(\)](#), [info\(\)](#), [ncbocache\\_load\(\)](#), [ncbocache\\_save\(\)](#), [obj\\_check\(\)](#), [obj\\_load\(\)](#), [obj\\_save\(\)](#), [outfmt\\_get\(\)](#), [parameters\\_load\(\)](#), [parameters\\_setup\(\)](#), [parent\\_get\(\)](#), [progress\\_init\(\)](#), [progress\\_read\(\)](#), [progress\\_reset\(\)](#), [progress\\_save\(\)](#), [rank\\_get\(\)](#), [rawseqrec\\_breakdown\(\)](#), [safely\\_connect\(\)](#), [search\\_and\\_cache\(\)](#), [searchterm\\_gen\(\)](#), [seeds\\_blast\(\)](#), [seq\\_download\(\)](#),

[seqarc\\_gen\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_augment\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_convert\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_gen\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_get\(\)](#), [sids\\_check\(\)](#), [sids\\_get\(\)](#), [sids\\_load\(\)](#), [sids\\_save\(\)](#), [sqs\\_count\(\)](#), [sqs\\_save\(\)](#), [stage\\_args\\_check\(\)](#), [stages\\_run\(\)](#), [tax\\_download\(\)](#), [taxdict\\_gen\(\)](#), [taxtree\\_gen\(\)](#), [txids\\_get\(\)](#), [txnds\\_count\(\)](#), [warn\(\)](#)

---

fastCheckTreeMan      *Check if tree is correct, fast!*

---

### Description

Return T/F if tree is a true TreeMan object

### Usage

```
fastCheckTreeMan(object)
```

### Arguments

object              TreeMan object

### Details

Whenever a tree is first initiated this check is used. For more detailed checking use [checkNd1st](#).

### See Also

[checkNd1st](#), [checkTreeMen](#)

---

gb\_extract              *Extract elements from a raw GenBank record*

---

### Description

Returns a list of elements from a GenBank record such as 'organism', 'sequence' and features.

### Usage

```
gb_extract(record)
```

### Arguments

record              raw GenBank text record

### Details

Uses [restez](#) extract functions. See [restez](#) package for more details.



**Value**

list of GenBank elements

**See Also**

Other run-private: `batcher()`, `blast_clstr()`, `blast_filter()`, `blast_setup()`, `blast_sqc()`, `blastcache_load()`, `blastcache_save()`, `blastdb_gen()`, `blastn_run()`, `cache_rm()`, `cache_setup()`, `clade_select()`, `clstr2_calc()`, `clstr_all()`, `clstr_direct()`, `clstr_sqc()`, `clstr_subtree()`, `clstrarc_gen()`, `clstrarc_join()`, `clstrrec_gen()`, `clstrs_calc()`, `clstrs_join()`, `clstrs_merge()`, `clstrs_renumber()`, `clstrs_save()`, `cmdln()`, `descendants_get()`, `download_obj_check()`, `error()`, `hierarchic_download()`, `info()`, `ncbocache_load()`, `ncbocache_save()`, `obj_check()`, `obj_load()`, `obj_save()`, `outfmt_get()`, `parameters_load()`, `parameters_setup()`, `parent_get()`, `progress_init()`, `progress_read()`, `progress_reset()`, `progress_save()`, `rank_get()`, `rawseqrec_breakdown()`, `safely_connect()`, `search_and_cache()`, `searchterm_gen()`, `seeds_blast()`, `seq_download()`, `seqarc_gen()`, `seqrec_augment()`, `seqrec_convert()`, `seqrec_gen()`, `seqrec_get()`, `sids_check()`, `sids_get()`, `sids_load()`, `sids_save()`, `sqc_count()`, `sqc_save()`, `stage_args_check()`, `stages_run()`, `tax_download()`, `taxdict_gen()`, `taxtree_gen()`, `txids_get()`, `txnds_count()`, `warn()`

---

getAge

*Get age of tree*

---

**Description**

Returns age, numeric, of tree

**Usage**

```
getAge(tree, parallel = FALSE)
```

**Arguments**

tree	TreeMan object
parallel	logical, make parallel?

**Details**

Calculates the age of a tree, determined as the maximum tip to root distance.

**See Also**

`updateSlts`, <https://github.com/DomBennett/treeman/wiki/get-methods>

**Examples**

```
tree <- randTree(10)
(getAge(tree))
```

---

getBiprts	<i>Get the sets of labels for each bipartition in tree</i>
-----------	--

---

### Description

Returns a list of tip IDs for each branch in the tree. Options allow the user to act as if the root is not present and to use a universal code for comparing between trees.

### Usage

```
getBiprts(tree, tips = tree@tips, root = TRUE, universal = FALSE)
```

### Arguments

tree	TreeMan object
tips	vector of tips IDs to use for bipartitions
root	Include the root for the bipartitions? Default TRUE.
universal	Create a code for comparing between trees

### Details

Setting root to FALSE will ignore the bipartitions created by the root. Setting universal to TRUE will return a vector of 0s and 1s, not a list of tips. These codes will always begin with 1, and will allow for the comparison of splits between trees as they do not have "chirality", so to speak.

### See Also

[calcDstRF](#)

### Examples

```
tree <- randTree(10)
# get all of the tip IDs for each branch in the rooted tree
(getBiprts(tree))
# ignore the root and get bipartitions for unrooted tree
(getBiprts(tree, root = FALSE))
# use the universal code for comparing splits between trees
(getBiprts(tree, root = FALSE, universal = TRUE))
```

---

getCnnctdNds	<i>Get all nodes connected by given tips</i>
--------------	--

---

**Description**

Return a vector of IDs of all nodes that are connected to tip IDs given.

**Usage**

```
getCnnctdNds(tree, tids)
```

**Arguments**

tree	TreeMan object
tids	vector of tip IDs

**Details**

Returns a vector. This function is the basis for `calcPhyDv()`, it determines the unique set of nodes connected for a set of tips.

**See Also**

[getUnqNds](#), [calcFrPrp](#), [calcPhyDv](#)

**Examples**

```
tree <- randTree(10)
cnnctdnds <- getCnnctdNds(tree, c("t1", "t2"))
```

---

getDcsd	<i>Get extinct tips from a tree</i>
---------	-------------------------------------

---

**Description**

Return all extinct tip IDs.

**Usage**

```
getDcsd(tree, tol = 1e-08)
```

**Arguments**

tree	TreeMan object
tol	zero tolerance

**Details**

Returns a vector.

**See Also**

[getLvng](#), [isUltrmtrc](#), <https://github.com/DomBennett/treeman/wiki/get-methods>

**Examples**

```
tree <- randTree(10)
(getDcsd(tree))
```

---

getLvng

*Get extant tips from a tree*

---

**Description**

Return all extant tip IDs.

**Usage**

```
getLvng(tree, tol = 1e-08)
```

**Arguments**

tree	TreeMan object
tol	zero tolerance

**Details**

Returns a vector.

**See Also**

[getDcsd](#), [isUltrmtrc](#), <https://github.com/DomBennett/treeman/wiki/get-methods>

**Examples**

```
tree <- randTree(10)
(getLvng(tree))
```

---

getNdAge	<i>Get age</i>
----------	----------------

---

**Description**

Return the age for id. Requires the known age of the tree to be provided.

**Usage**

```
getNdAge(tree, id, tree_age)
```

**Arguments**

tree	TreeMan object
id	node id
tree_age	numeric value of known age of tree

**Details**

Returns a numeric.

**See Also**

[getNdsAge, getSpnAge, getSpnsAge, getPrnt, getAge](https://github.com/DomBennett/treeman/wiki/get-methods) <https://github.com/DomBennett/treeman/wiki/get-methods>

**Examples**

```
data(mammals)
# when did apes emerge?
# get parent id for all apes
prnt_id <- getPrnt(mammals, ids = c("Homo_sapiens", "Hylobates_concolor"))
# mammal_age <- getAge(mammals) # ~166.2, needs to be performed when tree is not up-to-date
getNdAge(mammals, id = prnt_id, tree_age = 166.2)
```

---

getNdKids	<i>Get children IDs</i>
-----------	-------------------------

---

**Description**

Return the node ids of all tips that descend from node.

**Usage**

```
getNdKids(tree, id)
```

**Arguments**

tree	TreeMan object
id	node id

**Details**

Returns a vector

**See Also**

[getNdsKids](https://github.com/DomBennett/treeman/wiki/get-methods), <https://github.com/DomBennett/treeman/wiki/get-methods>

**Examples**

```
tree <- randTree(10)
# everyone descends from root
getNdKids(tree, id = tree["root"])
```

---

getNdLng

*Get lineage*

---

**Description**

Return unique taxonomic names for connecting id to root.

**Usage**

```
getNdLng(tree, id)
```

**Arguments**

tree	TreeMan object
id	node id

**Details**

Returns a vector.

**See Also**

[getNdsLng](https://github.com/DomBennett/treeman/wiki/get-methods), [getNdsFrnTxnmys](https://github.com/DomBennett/treeman/wiki/get-methods), <https://github.com/DomBennett/treeman/wiki/get-methods>

**Examples**

```
data(mammals)
# return human lineage
getNdLng(mammals, id = "Homo_sapiens")
```

---

getNdPD	<i>Get phylogenetic diversity of node</i>
---------	---

---

**Description**

Return summed value of all descending spns

**Usage**

```
getNdPD(tree, id)
```

**Arguments**

tree	TreeMan object
id	node id

**Details**

Sums the lengths of all descending branches from a node.

**See Also**

[getNdsPD](https://github.com/DomBennett/treeman/wiki/get-methods), <https://github.com/DomBennett/treeman/wiki/get-methods>

**Examples**

```
tree <- randTree(10)
getNdPD(tree, id = "n1") # return PD of n1 which in this case is for the whole tree
```

---

getNdPrdst	<i>Get pre-distance</i>
------------	-------------------------

---

**Description**

Return root to tip distance (prdst) for id

**Usage**

```
getNdPrdst(tree, id)
```

**Arguments**

tree	TreeMan object
id	node id

**Details**

Sums the lengths of all branches from `id` to root.

**See Also**

[getNdsPrdst](#), <https://github.com/DomBennett/treeman/wiki/get-methods>

**Examples**

```
tree <- randTree(10)
getNdPrdst(tree, id = "t1") # return the distance to root from t1
```

---

getNdPrids

*Get pre-nodes to root*

---

**Description**

Return node ids for connecting `id` to root.

**Usage**

```
getNdPrids(tree, id)
```

**Arguments**

<code>tree</code>	TreeMan object
<code>id</code>	node id

**Details**

Returns a vector. IDs are returned order from node ID to root.

**See Also**

[getNdsPrids](#), [getNdPtids](#), [getNdsPtids](#), <https://github.com/DomBennett/treeman/wiki/get-methods>

**Examples**

```
tree <- randTree(10)
# get all nodes to root
getNdPrids(tree, id = "t1")
```



---

getNdPtids                      *Get post-nodes to tips*

---

### Description

Return node ids for connecting id to kids.

### Usage

```
getNdPtids(tree, id)
```

### Arguments

tree	TreeMan object
id	node id

### Details

Returns a vector.

### See Also

[getNdsPtids](#), [getNdPrids](#), [getNdsPrids](#), <https://github.com/DomBennett/treeman/wiki/get-methods>

### Examples

```
tree <- randTree(10)
# get all nodes from root to tip
getNdPtids(tree, id = "n1")
```

---

getNdsAge                      *Get ages for multiple nodes*

---

### Description

Return the age for ids.

### Usage

```
getNdsAge(tree, ids, tree_age, parallel = FALSE, progress = "none")
```

**Arguments**

tree	TreeMan object
ids	vector of node ids
tree_age	numeric value of known age of tree
parallel	logical, make parallel?
progress	name of the progress bar to use, see <a href="#">create_progress_bar</a>

**Details**

Returns a vector, parallelizable.

**See Also**

[getNdAge](#), [getSpnAge](#), [getSpnsAge](#), <https://github.com/DomBennett/treeman/wiki/get-methods>

**Examples**

```
tree <- randTree(10)
getNdsAge(tree, ids = tree["nds"], tree_age = getAge(tree))
```

---

getNdsFrmTxnyms	<i>Get IDs for nodes represented txnyms</i>
-----------------	---

---

**Description**

Return a list of IDs for any node that contains the given txnyms.

**Usage**

```
getNdsFrmTxnyms(tree, txnyms)
```

**Arguments**

tree	TreeMan object
txnyms	vector of taxonomic group names

**Details**

Returns a list. Txnyms must be spelt correctly.

**See Also**

[taxaResolve](#), [setTxnyms](#), [searchTxnyms](#), [getNdsLng](#), [getNdLng](#)

**Examples**

```
data(mammals)
# what ID represents the apes?
getNdsFrmTxnyms(mammals, "Hominoidea")
```

---

`getNdsKids`*Get children IDs for multiple nodes*

---

**Description**

Return the node ids of all tips that descend from each node in `ids`.

**Usage**

```
getNdsKids(tree, ids, parallel = FALSE, progress = "none")
```

**Arguments**

<code>tree</code>	TreeMan object
<code>ids</code>	vector of node ids
<code>parallel</code>	logical, make parallel?
<code>progress</code>	name of the progress bar to use, see <a href="#">create_progress_bar</a>

**Details**

Returns a list, parallelizable.

**See Also**

[getNdKids](#), <https://github.com/DomBennett/treeman/wiki/get-methods>

**Examples**

```
tree <- randTree(10)
getNdsKids(tree, id = tree["nds"])
```

---

`getNdsLng`*Get lineage for multiple nodes*

---

**Description**

Return unique taxonyms for connecting `ids` to root.

**Usage**

```
getNdsLng(tree, ids, parallel = FALSE, progress = "none")
```

**Arguments**

tree	TreeMan object
ids	vector of node ids
parallel	logical, make parallel?
progress	name of the progress bar to use, see <a href="#">create_progress_bar</a>

**Details**

Returns a list, parallelizable.

**See Also**

[getNdLng](#), [getNdsFrmTxnyms](#), <https://github.com/DomBennett/treeman/wiki/get-methods>

**Examples**

```
data(mammals)
# return human and gorilla lineages
getNdsLng(mammals, id = c("Homo_sapiens", "Gorilla_gorilla"))
```

---

getNdSlT

*Get a node slot*

---

**Description**

Returns the value of named slot.

**Usage**

```
getNdSlT(tree, slt_nm, id)
```

**Arguments**

tree	TreeMan object
slt_nm	slot name
id	node id

**Details**

Returned object depends on name, either character, vector or numeric. Default node slots are: id, spn, prid, ptid and txnym. If slot is empty, returns NA.

**See Also**

[getNdsSlT](#), <https://github.com/DomBennett/treeman/wiki/get-methods>

**Examples**

```
tree <- randTree(10)
getNdsPD(tree, slt_nm = "spn", id = "t1") # return span of t1
```

---

**getNdsPD***Get phylogenetic diversities of nodes*

---

**Description**

Return summed value of all descending spns

**Usage**

```
getNdsPD(tree, ids, parallel = FALSE, progress = "none")
```

**Arguments**

tree	TreeMan object
ids	vector of node ids
parallel	logical, make parallel?
progress	name of the progress bar to use, see <a href="#">create_progress_bar</a>

**Details**

Sums the lengths of all descending branches from a node.

**See Also**

[getNdsPD](https://github.com/DomBennett/treeman/wiki/get-methods), <https://github.com/DomBennett/treeman/wiki/get-methods>

**Examples**

```
tree <- randTree(10)
getNdsPD(tree, ids = tree["all"]) # return PD of all ids
```

---

getNdsPrdst                      *Get pre-distances*

---

**Description**

Return root to tip distances (prdst) for ids

**Usage**

```
getNdsPrdst(tree, ids, parallel = FALSE, progress = "none")
```

**Arguments**

tree	TreeMan object
ids	vector of node ids
parallel	logical, make parallel?
progress	name of the progress bar to use, see <a href="#">create_progress_bar</a>

**Details**

Sums the lengths of all branches from ids to root.

**See Also**

[getNdPrdst](#), <https://github.com/DomBennett/treeman/wiki/get-methods>

**Examples**

```
tree <- randTree(10)
getNdsPrdst(tree, ids = tree["tips"]) # return prdsts for all tips
```

---

getNdsPrids                      *Get pre-nodes for multiple nodes*

---

**Description**

Return node ids for connecting id to root.

**Usage**

```
getNdsPrids(tree, ids, ordrd = FALSE, parallel = FALSE, progress = "none")
```

**Arguments**

tree	TreeMan object
ids	vector of node ids
ordrd	logical, ensure returned prids are ordered ID to root
parallel	logical, make parallel?
progress	name of the progress bar to use, see <a href="#">create_progress_bar</a>

**Details**

Returns a list, parallizable. The function will work faster if ordrd is FALSE.

**See Also**

[getNdPrids](#), [getNdPtids](#), [getNdsPtids](#), <https://github.com/DomBennett/treeman/wiki/get-methods>

**Examples**

```
tree <- randTree(10)
getNdsPrids(tree, ids = tree["tips"])
```

---

getNdsPtids

*Get post-nodes to tips for multiple nodes*

---

**Description**

Return node ids for connecting ids to kids.

**Usage**

```
getNdsPtids(tree, ids, parallel = FALSE, progress = "none")
```

**Arguments**

tree	TreeMan object
ids	vector of node ids
parallel	logical, make parallel?
progress	name of the progress bar to use, see <a href="#">create_progress_bar</a>

**Details**

Returns a list, parallizable.

**See Also**

[getNdPtids](#), [getNdPrids](#), [getNdsPrids](#), <https://github.com/DomBennett/treeman/wiki/get-methods>

## Examples

```
tree <- randTree(10)
# get all nodes to tip for all nodes
getNdsPtids(tree, ids = tree["nds"])
```

---

getNdsSlt

*Get a node slot for multiple nodes*

---

## Description

Returns the values of named slot as a vector for atomic values, else list.

## Usage

```
getNdsSlt(tree, slt_nm, ids, parallel = FALSE, progress = "none")
```

## Arguments

tree	TreeMan object
slt_nm	slot name
ids	vector of node ids
parallel	logical, make parallel?
progress	name of the progress bar to use, see <a href="#">create_progress_bar</a>

## Details

Returned object depends on name, either character, vector or numeric. Parallelizable. Default node slots are: id, spn, prid, ptid and txnym.

## See Also

[getNdsSlt](https://github.com/DomBennett/treeman/wiki/get-methods), <https://github.com/DomBennett/treeman/wiki/get-methods>

## Examples

```
tree <- randTree(10)
getNdsSlt(tree, slt_nm = "spn", ids = tree["tips"]) # return spans of all tips
```



---

getNdsSstr	<i>Get sister id</i>
------------	----------------------

---

**Description**

Returns the ids of the sister(s) of nd ids given.

**Usage**

```
getNdsSstr(tree, ids, parallel = FALSE, progress = "none")
```

**Arguments**

tree	TreeMan object
ids	nd ids
parallel	logical, make parallel?
progress	name of the progress bar to use, see <a href="#">create_progress_bar</a>

**Details**

An error is raised if there is no sister (e.g. for the root). There can be more than one sister if tree is polytomous. Parallelizable.

**See Also**

[getNdSstr](https://github.com/DomBennett/treeman/wiki/get-methods), <https://github.com/DomBennett/treeman/wiki/get-methods>

**Examples**

```
tree <- randTree(10)
getNdsSstr(tree, ids = tree["tips"])
```

---

getNdSstr	<i>Get sister id</i>
-----------	----------------------

---

**Description**

Returns the id of the sister(s) of node id given.

**Usage**

```
getNdSstr(tree, id)
```

**Arguments**

tree	TreeMan object
id	node id

**Details**

An error is raised if there is no sister (e.g. for the root). There can be more than one sister if tree is polytomous.

**See Also**

[getNdsSstr](https://github.com/DomBennett/treeman/wiki/get-methods), <https://github.com/DomBennett/treeman/wiki/get-methods>

**Examples**

```
tree <- randTree(10)
getNdsSstr(tree, id = "t1")
```

---

getOtgrp

*Get outgroup*

---

**Description**

Return the outgroup based on a tree and a vector of IDs.

**Usage**

```
getOtgrp(tree, ids)
```

**Arguments**

tree	TreeMan object
ids	vector of node ids

**Details**

Returns a id, character. If there are multiple possible outgroups, returns NULL.

**See Also**

<https://github.com/DomBennett/treeman/wiki/get-methods>

**Examples**

```
data(mammals)
# orangutan is an outgroup wrt humans and chimps
getOtgrp(mammals, ids = c("Homo_sapiens", "Pan_troglodytes", "Pongo_pygmaeus"))
```

---

getPath	<i>Get path between nodes</i>
---------	-------------------------------

---

**Description**

Return node ids for connecting from to to.

**Usage**

```
getPath(tree, from, to)
```

**Arguments**

tree	TreeMan object
from	starting node id
to	ending node id

**Details**

Returns a vector, first id is from to to.

**See Also**

<https://github.com/DomBennett/treeman/wiki/get-methods>

**Examples**

```
data(mammals)
# what's the phylogenetic distance from humans to gorillas?
ape_id <- getPrnt(mammals, ids = c("Homo_sapiens", "Hylobates_concolor"))
pth <- getPath(mammals, from = "Homo_sapiens", to = "Gorilla_gorilla")
sum(getNdsSlt(mammals, ids = pth, slt_nm = "spn"))
```

---

getPrnt	<i>Get parent</i>
---------	-------------------

---

**Description**

Return parental (most recent common ancestor) node id for ids.

**Usage**

```
getPrnt(tree, ids)
```

**Arguments**

tree	TreeMan object
ids	vector of node ids

**Details**

Returns a character.

**See Also**

[getSubtree](https://github.com/DomBennett/treeman/wiki/get-methods), <https://github.com/DomBennett/treeman/wiki/get-methods>

**Examples**

```
data(mammals)
# choosing ids from the two main branches of apes allows to find the parent for all apes
ape_id <- getPrnt(mammals, ids = c("Homo_sapiens", "Hylobates_concolor"))
```

---

getSpnAge	<i>Get age range</i>
-----------	----------------------

---

**Description**

Return start and end ages for id from when it first appears to when it splits

**Usage**

```
getSpnAge(tree, id, tree_age)
```

**Arguments**

tree	TreeMan object
id	node id
tree_age	numeric value of known age of tree

**Details**

Returns a dataframe.

**See Also**

[getNdAge](https://github.com/DomBennett/treeman/wiki/get-methods), [getNdsAge](https://github.com/DomBennett/treeman/wiki/get-methods), [getSpnsAge](https://github.com/DomBennett/treeman/wiki/get-methods), <https://github.com/DomBennett/treeman/wiki/get-methods>

**Examples**

```
data(mammals)
# mammal_age <- getAge(mammals) # ~166.2, needs to be performed when tree is not up-to-date
getSpnAge(mammals, id = "Homo_sapiens", tree_age = 166.2)
```

---

getSpnsAge	<i>Get age ranges for multiple nodes</i>
------------	--

---

**Description**

Return start and end ages for ids from when they first appear to when they split

**Usage**

```
getSpnsAge(tree, ids, tree_age, parallel = FALSE, progress = "none")
```

**Arguments**

tree	TreeMan object
ids	vector of node ids
tree_age	numeric value of known age of tree
parallel	logical, make parallel?
progress	name of the progress bar to use, see <a href="#">create_progress_bar</a>

**Details**

Returns a dataframe, parallelizable.

**See Also**

[getNdAge](#), [getNdsAge](#), [getSpnAge](#), <https://github.com/DomBennett/treeman/wiki/get-methods>

**Examples**

```
tree <- randTree(10)
# all nodes but root
ids <- tree["nds"][tree["nds"] != tree["root"]]
getSpnsAge(tree, ids = ids, tree_age = getAge(tree))
```

---

getSubtree	<i>Get subtree</i>
------------	--------------------

---

**Description**

Return tree descending from id.

**Usage**

```
getSubtree(tree, id)
```

**Arguments**

tree	TreeMan object
id	node id

**Details**

Returns a TreeMan, parallelizable. id must be an internal node.

**See Also**

[getPrnt](#), [addClade](#), <https://github.com/DomBennett/treeman/wiki/get-methods>

**Examples**

```
data(mammals)
# get tree of apes
ape_id <- getPrnt(mammals, ids = c("Homo_sapiens", "Hylobates_concolor"))
apes <- getSubtree(mammals, id = ape_id)
summary(apes)
```

---

getUnqNds

*Get unique nodes represented by tips*

---

**Description**

Return a list of IDs for any node that are represented by tip IDs given.

**Usage**

```
getUnqNds(tree, tids)
```

**Arguments**

tree	TreeMan object
tids	vector of tip IDs

**Details**

Returns a vector.

**See Also**

[getCnnctdNds](#), [calcFrPrp](#), [calcPhyDv](#)

**Examples**

```
tree <- randTree(10)
unqnds <- getUnqNds(tree, c("t1", "t2"))
```

---

get_clstr_slot	<i>Get slot data for each cluster record</i>
----------------	--

---

**Description**

Get slot data for cluster(s)

**Usage**

```
get_clstr_slot(phyloba, cid, slt_nm = list_clstrrec_slots())
```

**Arguments**

phyloba	Phylota object
cid	Cluster ID
slt_nm	Slot name

**Value**

vector

**See Also**

Other tools-public: [calc\\_mad\(\)](#), [calc\\_wrdfrq\(\)](#), [drop\\_by\\_rank\(\)](#), [drop\\_clstrs\(\)](#), [drop\\_sqs\(\)](#), [get\\_nsqs\(\)](#), [get\\_ntaxa\(\)](#), [get\\_sq\\_slot\(\)](#), [get\\_stage\\_times\(\)](#), [get\\_tx\\_slot\(\)](#), [get\\_txids\(\)](#), [is\\_txid\\_in\\_clstr\(\)](#), [is\\_txid\\_in\\_sq\(\)](#), [list\\_clstrrec\\_slots\(\)](#), [list\\_ncbi\\_ranks\(\)](#), [list\\_seqrec\\_slots\(\)](#), [list\\_taxrec\\_slots\(\)](#), [plot\\_phyloba\\_pa\(\)](#), [plot\\_phyloba\\_treemap\(\)](#), [read\\_phyloba\(\)](#), [write\\_sqs\(\)](#)

**Examples**

```
data('aotus')
random_cid <- sample(aotus@cids, 1)
(get_clstr_slot(phyloba = aotus, cid = random_cid, slt_nm = 'seed'))
# see list_clstrrec_slots() for available slots
(list_clstrrec_slots())
```

---

get_nsqs	<i>Count number of sequences</i>
----------	----------------------------------

---

**Description**

Count the number of sequences in a cluster(s).

**Usage**

```
get_nsqs(phyloba, cid)
```

**Arguments**

phylota	Phylota object
cid	Cluster ID(s)

**Value**

vector

**See Also**

Other tools-public: [calc\\_mad\(\)](#), [calc\\_wrdfreq\(\)](#), [drop\\_by\\_rank\(\)](#), [drop\\_clstrs\(\)](#), [drop\\_sqs\(\)](#), [get\\_clstr\\_slot\(\)](#), [get\\_ntaxa\(\)](#), [get\\_sq\\_slot\(\)](#), [get\\_stage\\_times\(\)](#), [get\\_tx\\_slot\(\)](#), [get\\_txids\(\)](#), [is\\_txid\\_in\\_clstr\(\)](#), [is\\_txid\\_in\\_sq\(\)](#), [list\\_clstrrec\\_slots\(\)](#), [list\\_ncbi\\_ranks\(\)](#), [list\\_seqrec\\_slots\(\)](#), [list\\_taxrec\\_slots\(\)](#), [plot\\_phylota\\_pa\(\)](#), [plot\\_phylota\\_treemap\(\)](#), [read\\_phylota\(\)](#), [write\\_sqs\(\)](#)

**Examples**

```
data("cycads")
# count seqs for a random 10 clusters
random_cids <- sample(cycads@cids, 10)
nsqs <- get_nsqs(phylota = cycads, cid = random_cids)
```

---

get\_ntaxa

---

*Count number of unique taxa*


---

**Description**

Count the number of unique taxa represented by cluster(s) or sequences in phylota table Use `rnk` to specify a taxonomic level to count. If NULL counts will be made to the lowest level reported on NCBI.

**Usage**

```
get_ntaxa(phylota, cid = NULL, sid = NULL, rnk = NULL, keep_higher = FALSE)
```

**Arguments**

phylota	Phylota object
cid	Cluster ID(s)
sid	Sequence ID(s)
rnk	Taxonomic rank
keep_higher	Keep higher taxonomic ranks?

**Value**

vector



**See Also**

Other tools-public: [calc\\_mad\(\)](#), [calc\\_wrdfrq\(\)](#), [drop\\_by\\_rank\(\)](#), [drop\\_clstrs\(\)](#), [drop\\_sqs\(\)](#), [get\\_clstr\\_slot\(\)](#), [get\\_nsqs\(\)](#), [get\\_sq\\_slot\(\)](#), [get\\_stage\\_times\(\)](#), [get\\_tx\\_slot\(\)](#), [get\\_txids\(\)](#), [is\\_txid\\_in\\_clstr\(\)](#), [is\\_txid\\_in\\_sq\(\)](#), [list\\_clstrrec\\_slots\(\)](#), [list\\_ncbi\\_ranks\(\)](#), [list\\_seqrec\\_slots\(\)](#), [list\\_taxrec\\_slots\(\)](#), [plot\\_phylota\\_pa\(\)](#), [plot\\_phylota\\_treemap\(\)](#), [read\\_phylota\(\)](#), [write\\_sqs\(\)](#)

**Examples**

```
data('bromeliads')
# how many species are there?
(get_ntaxa(phylota = bromeliads, cid = '0', rnk = 'species'))
# how many genera are there?
(get_ntaxa(phylota = bromeliads, cid = '0', rnk = 'genus'))
# how many families are there?
(get_ntaxa(phylota = bromeliads, cid = '0', rnk = 'family'))
# use list_ncbi_ranks() to see available rank names
(list_ncbi_ranks())
```

---

get\_sq\_slot

*Get slot data for each sequence*


---

**Description**

Get slot data for either or sequences in a cluster of a vector of sequence IDs. Use [list\\_seqrec\\_slots\(\)](#) for a list of available slots.

**Usage**

```
get_sq_slot(phylota, cid = NULL, sid = NULL, slt_nm = list_seqrec_slots())
```

**Arguments**

phylota	Phylota object
cid	Cluster ID
sid	Sequence ID(s)
slt_nm	Slot name

**Value**

vector

**See Also**

Other tools-public: [calc\\_mad\(\)](#), [calc\\_wrdfrq\(\)](#), [drop\\_by\\_rank\(\)](#), [drop\\_clstrs\(\)](#), [drop\\_sqs\(\)](#), [get\\_clstr\\_slot\(\)](#), [get\\_nsqs\(\)](#), [get\\_ntaxa\(\)](#), [get\\_stage\\_times\(\)](#), [get\\_tx\\_slot\(\)](#), [get\\_txids\(\)](#), [is\\_txid\\_in\\_clstr\(\)](#), [is\\_txid\\_in\\_sq\(\)](#), [list\\_clstrrec\\_slots\(\)](#), [list\\_ncbi\\_ranks\(\)](#), [list\\_seqrec\\_slots\(\)](#), [list\\_taxrec\\_slots\(\)](#), [plot\\_phylota\\_pa\(\)](#), [plot\\_phylota\\_treemap\(\)](#), [read\\_phylota\(\)](#), [write\\_sqs\(\)](#)

**Examples**

```
data('aotus')
random_sid <- sample(aotus@sids, 1)
(get_sq_slot(phylota = aotus, sid = random_sid, slt_nm = 'dfln'))
# see list_seqrec_slots() for available slots
(list_seqrec_slots())
```

---

get_stage_times	<i>Get run times for different stages</i>
-----------------	---

---

**Description**

Get slot data for taxa(s)

**Usage**

```
get_stage_times(wd)
```

**Arguments**

wd                      Working directory

**Value**

list of runtimes in minutes

**See Also**

Other tools-public: [calc\\_mad\(\)](#), [calc\\_wrdfreq\(\)](#), [drop\\_by\\_rank\(\)](#), [drop\\_clstrs\(\)](#), [drop\\_sqs\(\)](#), [get\\_clstr\\_slot\(\)](#), [get\\_nsqs\(\)](#), [get\\_ntaxa\(\)](#), [get\\_sq\\_slot\(\)](#), [get\\_tx\\_slot\(\)](#), [get\\_txids\(\)](#), [is\\_txid\\_in\\_clstr\(\)](#), [is\\_txid\\_in\\_sq\(\)](#), [list\\_clstrrec\\_slots\(\)](#), [list\\_ncbi\\_ranks\(\)](#), [list\\_seqrec\\_slots\(\)](#), [list\\_taxrec\\_slots\(\)](#), [plot\\_phylota\\_pa\(\)](#), [plot\\_phylota\\_treemap\(\)](#), [read\\_phylota\(\)](#), [write\\_sqs\(\)](#)

**Examples**

```
## Not run:

# Note, this example requires a wd with a completed phylotaR run
# return a named list of the time take in minutes for each stage
get_stage_times(wd = wd)

## End(Not run)
```

---

get_txids	<i>Get taxonomic IDs by rank</i>
-----------	----------------------------------

---

### Description

Return taxonomic IDs for a vector of sequence IDs or all sequences in a cluster. User can specify what rank the IDs should be returned. If NULL, the lowest level is returned.

### Usage

```
get_txids(
  phylota,
  cid = NULL,
  sid = NULL,
  txids = NULL,
  rnk = NULL,
  keep_higher = FALSE
)
```

### Arguments

phylota	Phylota object
cid	Cluster ID
sid	Sequence ID(s)
txids	Vector of txids
rnk	Taxonomic rank
keep_higher	Keep higher taxonomic IDs?

### Details

txids can either be provided by user or they can be determined for a vector of sids or for a cid. If keep\_higher is TRUE, any sequence that has a identity that is higher than the given rank will be returned. If FALSE, these sequences will return ”.

### Value

vector

### See Also

Other tools-public: [calc\\_mad\(\)](#), [calc\\_wrdfrq\(\)](#), [drop\\_by\\_rank\(\)](#), [drop\\_clstrs\(\)](#), [drop\\_sqs\(\)](#), [get\\_clstr\\_slot\(\)](#), [get\\_nsqs\(\)](#), [get\\_ntaxa\(\)](#), [get\\_sq\\_slot\(\)](#), [get\\_stage\\_times\(\)](#), [get\\_tx\\_slot\(\)](#), [is\\_txid\\_in\\_clstr\(\)](#), [is\\_txid\\_in\\_sq\(\)](#), [list\\_clstrrec\\_slots\(\)](#), [list\\_ncbi\\_ranks\(\)](#), [list\\_seqrec\\_slots\(\)](#), [list\\_taxrec\\_slots\(\)](#), [plot\\_phylota\\_pa\(\)](#), [plot\\_phylota\\_treemap\(\)](#), [read\\_phylota\(\)](#), [write\\_sqs\(\)](#)

**Examples**

```

data('bromeliads')
# get all the genus IDs and names
genus_ids <- get_txids(phylota = bromeliads, txids = bromeliads@txids,
                      rnk = 'genus')
genus_ids <- unique(genus_ids)
# drop empty IDs -- this happens if a given lineage has no ID for specified rank
genus_ids <- genus_ids[genus_ids != '']
# get names
(get_tx_slot(phylota = bromeliads, txid = genus_ids, slt_nm = 'scnm'))

```

---

get\_tx\_slot

*Get slot data for each taxon record*


---

**Description**

Get slot data for taxa(s)

**Usage**

```
get_tx_slot(phylota, txid, slt_nm = list_taxrec_slots())
```

**Arguments**

phylota	Phylota object
txid	Taxonomic ID
slt_nm	Slot name

**Value**

vector or list

**See Also**

Other tools-public: [calc\\_mad\(\)](#), [calc\\_wrdfreq\(\)](#), [drop\\_by\\_rank\(\)](#), [drop\\_clstrs\(\)](#), [drop\\_sqs\(\)](#), [get\\_clstr\\_slot\(\)](#), [get\\_nsqs\(\)](#), [get\\_ntaxa\(\)](#), [get\\_sq\\_slot\(\)](#), [get\\_stage\\_times\(\)](#), [get\\_txids\(\)](#), [is\\_txid\\_in\\_clstr\(\)](#), [is\\_txid\\_in\\_sq\(\)](#), [list\\_clstrrec\\_slots\(\)](#), [list\\_ncbi\\_ranks\(\)](#), [list\\_seqrec\\_slots\(\)](#), [list\\_taxrec\\_slots\(\)](#), [plot\\_phylota\\_pa\(\)](#), [plot\\_phylota\\_treemap\(\)](#), [read\\_phylota\(\)](#), [write\\_sqs\(\)](#)

**Examples**

```

data('aotus')
random_txid <- sample(aotus@txids, 1)
(get_tx_slot(phylota = aotus, txid = random_txid, slt_nm = 'scnm'))
# see list_taxrec_slots() for available slots
(list_taxrec_slots())

```

---

hierarchic\_download    *Hierarchically get sequences for a txid*

---

## Description

Looks up and downloads sequences for a taxonomic ID.

## Usage

```
hierarchic_download(txid, txdct, ps, lvl = 0)
```

## Arguments

txid	Taxonomic node ID, numeric
txdct	Taxonomic dictionary
ps	Parameters list, generated with parameters()
lvl	Integer, number of message indentations indicating code depth.

## Value

Vector of SeqRecs

## See Also

Other run-private: [batcher\(\)](#), [blast\\_clstr\(\)](#), [blast\\_filter\(\)](#), [blast\\_setup\(\)](#), [blast\\_sqz\(\)](#), [blastcache\\_load\(\)](#), [blastcache\\_save\(\)](#), [blastdb\\_gen\(\)](#), [blastn\\_run\(\)](#), [cache\\_rm\(\)](#), [cache\\_setup\(\)](#), [clade\\_select\(\)](#), [clstr2\\_calc\(\)](#), [clstr\\_all\(\)](#), [clstr\\_direct\(\)](#), [clstr\\_sqz\(\)](#), [clstr\\_subtree\(\)](#), [clstrarc\\_gen\(\)](#), [clstrarc\\_join\(\)](#), [clstrrec\\_gen\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_calc\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_join\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_merge\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_renumber\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_save\(\)](#), [cmdln\(\)](#), [descendants\\_get\(\)](#), [download\\_obj\\_check\(\)](#), [error\(\)](#), [gb\\_extract\(\)](#), [info\(\)](#), [ncbocache\\_load\(\)](#), [ncbocache\\_save\(\)](#), [obj\\_check\(\)](#), [obj\\_load\(\)](#), [obj\\_save\(\)](#), [outfmt\\_get\(\)](#), [parameters\\_load\(\)](#), [parameters\\_setup\(\)](#), [parent\\_get\(\)](#), [progress\\_init\(\)](#), [progress\\_read\(\)](#), [progress\\_reset\(\)](#), [progress\\_save\(\)](#), [rank\\_get\(\)](#), [rawseqrec\\_breakdown\(\)](#), [safely\\_connect\(\)](#), [search\\_and\\_cache\(\)](#), [searchterm\\_gen\(\)](#), [seeds\\_blast\(\)](#), [seq\\_download\(\)](#), [seqarc\\_gen\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_augment\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_convert\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_gen\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_get\(\)](#), [sids\\_check\(\)](#), [sids\\_get\(\)](#), [sids\\_load\(\)](#), [sids\\_save\(\)](#), [sqz\\_count\(\)](#), [sqz\\_save\(\)](#), [stage\\_args\\_check\(\)](#), [stages\\_run\(\)](#), [tax\\_download\(\)](#), [taxdict\\_gen\(\)](#), [taxtree\\_gen\(\)](#), [txids\\_get\(\)](#), [txnds\\_count\(\)](#), [warn\(\)](#)

---

info	<i>Write info message to log</i>
------	----------------------------------

---

**Description**

Inform a user via log.txt of pipeline progress.

**Usage**

```
info(lvl, ps, ...)
```

**Arguments**

lvl	Integer, number of message indentations indicating code depth.
ps	Parameters list, generated with parameters()
...	Message elements for concatenating

**See Also**

Other run-private: [batcher\(\)](#), [blast\\_clstr\(\)](#), [blast\\_filter\(\)](#), [blast\\_setup\(\)](#), [blast\\_sqz\(\)](#), [blastcache\\_load\(\)](#), [blastcache\\_save\(\)](#), [blastdb\\_gen\(\)](#), [blastn\\_run\(\)](#), [cache\\_rm\(\)](#), [cache\\_setup\(\)](#), [clade\\_select\(\)](#), [clstr2\\_calc\(\)](#), [clstr\\_all\(\)](#), [clstr\\_direct\(\)](#), [clstr\\_sqz\(\)](#), [clstr\\_subtree\(\)](#), [clstrarc\\_gen\(\)](#), [clstrarc\\_join\(\)](#), [clstrrec\\_gen\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_calc\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_join\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_merge\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_renumber\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_save\(\)](#), [cmdln\(\)](#), [descendants\\_get\(\)](#), [download\\_obj\\_check\(\)](#), [error\(\)](#), [gb\\_extract\(\)](#), [hierarchic\\_download\(\)](#), [ncbocache\\_load\(\)](#), [ncbocache\\_save\(\)](#), [obj\\_check\(\)](#), [obj\\_load\(\)](#), [obj\\_save\(\)](#), [outfmt\\_get\(\)](#), [parameters\\_load\(\)](#), [parameters\\_setup\(\)](#), [parent\\_get\(\)](#), [progress\\_init\(\)](#), [progress\\_read\(\)](#), [progress\\_reset\(\)](#), [progress\\_save\(\)](#), [rank\\_get\(\)](#), [rawseqrec\\_breakdown\(\)](#), [safely\\_connect\(\)](#), [search\\_and\\_cache\(\)](#), [searchterm\\_gen\(\)](#), [seeds\\_blast\(\)](#), [seq\\_download\(\)](#), [seqarc\\_gen\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_augment\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_convert\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_gen\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_get\(\)](#), [sids\\_check\(\)](#), [sids\\_get\(\)](#), [sids\\_load\(\)](#), [sids\\_save\(\)](#), [sqz\\_count\(\)](#), [sqz\\_save\(\)](#), [stage\\_args\\_check\(\)](#), [stages\\_run\(\)](#), [tax\\_download\(\)](#), [taxdict\\_gen\(\)](#), [taxtree\\_gen\(\)](#), [txids\\_get\(\)](#), [txnds\\_count\(\)](#), [warn\(\)](#)

---

isUltrmtrc	<i>Is tree ultrametric?</i>
------------	-----------------------------

---

**Description**

Return TRUE if all tips end at 0, else FALSE.

**Usage**

```
isUltrmtrc(tree, tol = 1e-08)
```

**Arguments**

tree	TreeMan object
tol	zero tolerance

**Details**

Returns a boolean. This function works in the background for the ['ultr'] slot in a TreeMan object.

**See Also**

[getLvng](#), [getDcsd](#)

**Examples**

```
tree <- randTree(10)
(isUltrmtrc(tree))
```

---

is_txid_in_clstr	<i>Is txid in cluster?</i>
------------------	----------------------------

---

**Description**

Checks if given txid is represented by any of the sequences of a cluster by searching through all the sequence search organism lineages.

**Usage**

```
is_txid_in_clstr(phygota, txid, cid)
```

**Arguments**

phygota	Phylota
txid	Taxonomic ID
cid	Cluster ID

**Value**

boolean

**See Also**

Other tools-public: [calc\\_mad\(\)](#), [calc\\_wrdfrq\(\)](#), [drop\\_by\\_rank\(\)](#), [drop\\_clstrs\(\)](#), [drop\\_sq\(\)](#), [get\\_clstr\\_slot\(\)](#), [get\\_nsqs\(\)](#), [get\\_ntaxa\(\)](#), [get\\_sq\\_slot\(\)](#), [get\\_stage\\_times\(\)](#), [get\\_tx\\_slot\(\)](#), [get\\_txids\(\)](#), [is\\_txid\\_in\\_sq\(\)](#), [list\\_clstrrec\\_slots\(\)](#), [list\\_ncbi\\_ranks\(\)](#), [list\\_seqrec\\_slots\(\)](#), [list\\_taxrec\\_slots\(\)](#), [plot\\_phygota\\_pa\(\)](#), [plot\\_phygota\\_treemap\(\)](#), [read\\_phygota\(\)](#), [write\\_sq\(\)](#)

**Examples**

```

data(tinamous)
cid <- tinamous@cids[[1]]
clstr <- tinamous[[cid]]
sq <- tinamous[[clstr@sids[[1]]]]
txid <- sq@txid
# expect true
is_txid_in_clstr(phylota = tinamous, txid = txid, cid = cid)

```

---

is\_txid\_in\_sq

*Is txid in sequence?*


---

**Description**

Checks if given txid is represented by sequence by looking at sequence source organism's lineage.

**Usage**

```
is_txid_in_sq(phylota, txid, sid)
```

**Arguments**

phylota	Phylota
txid	Taxonomic ID
sid	Sequence ID

**Value**

boolean

**See Also**

Other tools-public: [calc\\_mad\(\)](#), [calc\\_wrdfreq\(\)](#), [drop\\_by\\_rank\(\)](#), [drop\\_clstrs\(\)](#), [drop\\_sqs\(\)](#), [get\\_clstr\\_slot\(\)](#), [get\\_nsqs\(\)](#), [get\\_ntaxa\(\)](#), [get\\_sq\\_slot\(\)](#), [get\\_stage\\_times\(\)](#), [get\\_tx\\_slot\(\)](#), [get\\_txids\(\)](#), [is\\_txid\\_in\\_clstr\(\)](#), [list\\_clstrrec\\_slots\(\)](#), [list\\_ncbi\\_ranks\(\)](#), [list\\_seqrec\\_slots\(\)](#), [list\\_taxrec\\_slots\(\)](#), [plot\\_phylota\\_pa\(\)](#), [plot\\_phylota\\_treemap\(\)](#), [read\\_phylota\(\)](#), [write\\_sqs\(\)](#)

**Examples**

```

data(tinamous)
sid <- tinamous@sids[[1]]
sq <- tinamous[[sid]]
txid <- sq@txid
# expect true
is_txid_in_sq(phylota = tinamous, txid = txid, sid = sid)

```



---

list-to-TreeMen	<i>Convert list to a TreeMen</i>
-----------------	----------------------------------

---

**Description**

Return a TreeMen object from a list of TreeMans

**See Also**

[TreeMen-class](#)

**Examples**

```
trees <- list("tree_1" = randTree(10), "tree_2" = randTree(10))
trees <- as(trees, "TreeMen")
```

---

list_clstrrec_slots	<i>List all ClstrRec slots</i>
---------------------	--------------------------------

---

**Description**

Returns a vector of all available ClstrRec slots of type character, integer and numeric.

**Usage**

```
list_clstrrec_slots()
```

**Value**

vector

**See Also**

Other tools-public: [calc\\_mad\(\)](#), [calc\\_wrdfrq\(\)](#), [drop\\_by\\_rank\(\)](#), [drop\\_clstrs\(\)](#), [drop\\_sqs\(\)](#), [get\\_clstr\\_slot\(\)](#), [get\\_nsqs\(\)](#), [get\\_ntaxa\(\)](#), [get\\_sq\\_slot\(\)](#), [get\\_stage\\_times\(\)](#), [get\\_tx\\_slot\(\)](#), [get\\_txids\(\)](#), [is\\_txid\\_in\\_clstr\(\)](#), [is\\_txid\\_in\\_sq\(\)](#), [list\\_ncbi\\_ranks\(\)](#), [list\\_seqrec\\_slots\(\)](#), [list\\_taxrec\\_slots\(\)](#), [plot\\_phylota\\_pa\(\)](#), [plot\\_phylota\\_treemap\(\)](#), [read\\_phylota\(\)](#), [write\\_sqs\(\)](#)

---

list\_ncbi\_ranks      *List all NCBI Ranks*

---

**Description**

Returns a vector of all NCBI taxonomic ranks in descending order.

**Usage**

```
list_ncbi_ranks()
```

**Value**

vector

**See Also**

Other tools-public: [calc\\_mad\(\)](#), [calc\\_wrdfreq\(\)](#), [drop\\_by\\_rank\(\)](#), [drop\\_clstrs\(\)](#), [drop\\_sqs\(\)](#), [get\\_clstr\\_slot\(\)](#), [get\\_nsqs\(\)](#), [get\\_ntaxa\(\)](#), [get\\_sq\\_slot\(\)](#), [get\\_stage\\_times\(\)](#), [get\\_tx\\_slot\(\)](#), [get\\_txids\(\)](#), [is\\_txid\\_in\\_clstr\(\)](#), [is\\_txid\\_in\\_sq\(\)](#), [list\\_clstrrec\\_slots\(\)](#), [list\\_seqrec\\_slots\(\)](#), [list\\_taxrec\\_slots\(\)](#), [plot\\_phylota\\_pa\(\)](#), [plot\\_phylota\\_treemap\(\)](#), [read\\_phylota\(\)](#), [write\\_sqs\(\)](#)

---

list\_seqrec\_slots      *List all SeqRec slots*

---

**Description**

Returns a vector of all available SeqRec slots of type character, integer and numeric.

**Usage**

```
list_seqrec_slots()
```

**Value**

vector

**See Also**

Other tools-public: [calc\\_mad\(\)](#), [calc\\_wrdfreq\(\)](#), [drop\\_by\\_rank\(\)](#), [drop\\_clstrs\(\)](#), [drop\\_sqs\(\)](#), [get\\_clstr\\_slot\(\)](#), [get\\_nsqs\(\)](#), [get\\_ntaxa\(\)](#), [get\\_sq\\_slot\(\)](#), [get\\_stage\\_times\(\)](#), [get\\_tx\\_slot\(\)](#), [get\\_txids\(\)](#), [is\\_txid\\_in\\_clstr\(\)](#), [is\\_txid\\_in\\_sq\(\)](#), [list\\_clstrrec\\_slots\(\)](#), [list\\_ncbi\\_ranks\(\)](#), [list\\_taxrec\\_slots\(\)](#), [plot\\_phylota\\_pa\(\)](#), [plot\\_phylota\\_treemap\(\)](#), [read\\_phylota\(\)](#), [write\\_sqs\(\)](#)

---

list_taxrec_slots	<i>List all TaxRec slots</i>
-------------------	------------------------------

---

**Description**

Returns a vector of all available TaxRec slots of type character, integer and numeric.

**Usage**

```
list_taxrec_slots()
```

**Value**

vector

**See Also**

Other tools-public: [calc\\_mad\(\)](#), [calc\\_wrdfrq\(\)](#), [drop\\_by\\_rank\(\)](#), [drop\\_clstrs\(\)](#), [drop\\_sq\(\)](#), [get\\_clstr\\_slot\(\)](#), [get\\_nsqs\(\)](#), [get\\_ntaxa\(\)](#), [get\\_sq\\_slot\(\)](#), [get\\_stage\\_times\(\)](#), [get\\_tx\\_slot\(\)](#), [get\\_txids\(\)](#), [is\\_txid\\_in\\_clstr\(\)](#), [is\\_txid\\_in\\_sq\(\)](#), [list\\_clstrrec\\_slots\(\)](#), [list\\_ncbi\\_ranks\(\)](#), [list\\_seqrec\\_slots\(\)](#), [plot\\_phylota\\_pa\(\)](#), [plot\\_phylota\\_treemap\(\)](#), [read\\_phylota\(\)](#), [write\\_sq\(\)](#)

---

loadTreeMan	<i>Load a TreeMan object in serialization format</i>
-------------	--

---

**Description**

TreeMan equivalent to `load()` but able to handle node matrices.

**Usage**

```
loadTreeMan(file)
```

**Arguments**

file	file path
------	-----------

**Details**

It is not possible to use `save()` on TreeMan objects with node matrices. Node matrices are bigmemory matrices and are therefore outside the R environment, see bigmemory documentation for more information. Saving and loading a bigmemory matrix may cause memory issues in R and cause R to crash.

This function can safely read a TreeMan object with and without a node matrix. `saveTreeMan()` function stores the tree using the serialization format and the node matrix as a hidden .csv. Both

parts of the tree can be reloaded to an R environment with `loadTreeMan()`. The hidden node matrix filename is based on the file argument: `file + _ndmtrx`

Reading and writing trees with `saveTreeMan()` and `loadTreeMan` is faster than any of the other read and write functions.

### See Also

[saveTreeMan](#), [readTree](#), [writeTree](#), [readTrmn](#), [writeTrmn](#)

### Examples

```
tree <- randTree(100, wndmtrx = TRUE)
saveTreeMan(tree, file = "test.RData")
rm(tree)
tree <- loadTreeMan(file = "test.RData")
file.remove("test.RData", "testRData_ndmtrx")
```

---

mammals	<i>mammals</i>
---------	----------------

---

### Description

mammals

### Format

A TreeMan or Phylota object

### Examples

```
data("mammals")
```

---

mk_txid_in_sq_mtrx	<i>Return matrix of txid in sequence</i>
--------------------	--

---

### Description

Searches through lineages of sequences' source organisms to determine whether each txid is represented by the sequence.

### Usage

```
mk_txid_in_sq_mtrx(phylobta, txids, sids = phylobta@sids)
```

**Arguments**

phylota	Phylota
txids	Taxonomic IDs
sids	Sequence IDs

**Value**

matrix

**See Also**

Other tools-private: [summary\\_phylota\(\)](#), [update\\_phylota\(\)](#)

---

multiPhylo-class      *multiPhylo class*

---

**Description**

multiPhylo class

---

multiPhylo-to-TreeMen      *Convert multiPhylo to TreeMen*

---

**Description**

Return a TreeMen from ape's mutlPhylo

**See Also**

[TreeMan-to-phylo](#), [phylo-to-TreeMan](#), [TreeMen-to-multiPhylo](#) [TreeMan-class](#)

**Examples**

```
library(ape)
trees <- c(rtree(10), rtree(10), rtree(10))
trees <- as(trees, "TreeMen")
```

---

ncbocache\_load            *Retrieve cached NCBI query*

---

### Description

Run this function to load cached NCBI queries.

### Usage

```
ncbocache_load(fnm, args, wd)
```

### Arguments

fnm	NCBI Entrez function name
args	Args used for function
wd	Working directory

### Value

rentrez result

### See Also

Other run-private: [batcher\(\)](#), [blast\\_clstr\(\)](#), [blast\\_filter\(\)](#), [blast\\_setup\(\)](#), [blast\\_sqs\(\)](#), [blastcache\\_load\(\)](#), [blastcache\\_save\(\)](#), [blastdb\\_gen\(\)](#), [blastn\\_run\(\)](#), [cache\\_rm\(\)](#), [cache\\_setup\(\)](#), [clade\\_select\(\)](#), [clstr2\\_calc\(\)](#), [clstr\\_all\(\)](#), [clstr\\_direct\(\)](#), [clstr\\_sqs\(\)](#), [clstr\\_subtree\(\)](#), [clstrarc\\_gen\(\)](#), [clstrarc\\_join\(\)](#), [clstrrec\\_gen\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_calc\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_join\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_merge\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_renumber\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_save\(\)](#), [cmdln\(\)](#), [descendants\\_get\(\)](#), [download\\_obj\\_check\(\)](#), [error\(\)](#), [gb\\_extract\(\)](#), [hierarchic\\_download\(\)](#), [info\(\)](#), [ncbocache\\_save\(\)](#), [obj\\_check\(\)](#), [obj\\_load\(\)](#), [obj\\_save\(\)](#), [outfmt\\_get\(\)](#), [parameters\\_load\(\)](#), [parameters\\_setup\(\)](#), [parent\\_get\(\)](#), [progress\\_init\(\)](#), [progress\\_read\(\)](#), [progress\\_reset\(\)](#), [progress\\_save\(\)](#), [rank\\_get\(\)](#), [rawseqrec\\_breakdown\(\)](#), [safely\\_connect\(\)](#), [search\\_and\\_cache\(\)](#), [searchterm\\_gen\(\)](#), [seeds\\_blast\(\)](#), [seq\\_download\(\)](#), [seqarc\\_gen\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_augment\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_convert\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_gen\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_get\(\)](#), [sids\\_check\(\)](#), [sids\\_get\(\)](#), [sids\\_load\(\)](#), [sids\\_save\(\)](#), [sqs\\_count\(\)](#), [sqs\\_save\(\)](#), [stage\\_args\\_check\(\)](#), [stages\\_run\(\)](#), [tax\\_download\(\)](#), [taxdict\\_gen\(\)](#), [taxtree\\_gen\(\)](#), [txids\\_get\(\)](#), [txnds\\_count\(\)](#), [warn\(\)](#)

---

ncbocache\_save            *Save NCBI query result to cache*

---

### Description

Run whenever NCBI queries are made to save results in cache in case the pipeline is run again.

### Usage

```
ncbocache_save(fnm, args, wd, obj)
```

**Arguments**

fnm	NCBI Entrez function name
args	Args used for function
wd	Working directory
obj	NCBI query result

**See Also**

Other run-private: [batcher\(\)](#), [blast\\_clstr\(\)](#), [blast\\_filter\(\)](#), [blast\\_setup\(\)](#), [blast\\_sqs\(\)](#), [blastcache\\_load\(\)](#), [blastcache\\_save\(\)](#), [blastdb\\_gen\(\)](#), [blastn\\_run\(\)](#), [cache\\_rm\(\)](#), [cache\\_setup\(\)](#), [clade\\_select\(\)](#), [clstr2\\_calc\(\)](#), [clstr\\_all\(\)](#), [clstr\\_direct\(\)](#), [clstr\\_sqs\(\)](#), [clstr\\_subtree\(\)](#), [clstrarc\\_gen\(\)](#), [clstrarc\\_join\(\)](#), [clstrrec\\_gen\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_calc\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_join\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_merge\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_renumber\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_save\(\)](#), [cmdln\(\)](#), [descendants\\_get\(\)](#), [download\\_obj\\_check\(\)](#), [error\(\)](#), [gb\\_extract\(\)](#), [hierarchic\\_download\(\)](#), [info\(\)](#), [ncbocache\\_load\(\)](#), [obj\\_check\(\)](#), [obj\\_load\(\)](#), [obj\\_save\(\)](#), [outfmt\\_get\(\)](#), [parameters\\_load\(\)](#), [parameters\\_setup\(\)](#), [parent\\_get\(\)](#), [progress\\_init\(\)](#), [progress\\_read\(\)](#), [progress\\_reset\(\)](#), [progress\\_save\(\)](#), [rank\\_get\(\)](#), [rawseqrec\\_breakdown\(\)](#), [safely\\_connect\(\)](#), [search\\_and\\_cache\(\)](#), [searchterm\\_gen\(\)](#), [seeds\\_blast\(\)](#), [seq\\_download\(\)](#), [seqarc\\_gen\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_augment\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_convert\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_gen\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_get\(\)](#), [sids\\_check\(\)](#), [sids\\_get\(\)](#), [sids\\_load\(\)](#), [sids\\_save\(\)](#), [sqs\\_count\(\)](#), [sqs\\_save\(\)](#), [stage\\_args\\_check\(\)](#), [stages\\_run\(\)](#), [tax\\_download\(\)](#), [taxdict\\_gen\(\)](#), [taxtree\\_gen\(\)](#), [txids\\_get\(\)](#), [txnds\\_count\(\)](#), [warn\(\)](#)

---

Node-class

*Node-class*


---

**Description**

The Node is an S4 class used for displaying node information. It is only generated when a user implements the `[[[]]` on a tree. Information is only accurate if tree has been updated with `updateTree()`.

**Usage**

```
## S4 method for signature 'Node'
as.character(x)

## S4 method for signature 'Node'
show(object)

## S4 method for signature 'Node'
print(x)

## S4 method for signature 'Node'
summary(object)

## S4 method for signature 'Node,character,missing,missing'
x[i, j, ..., drop = TRUE]
```

**Arguments**

x	Node object
object	Node object
i	slot name
j	missing
...	missing
drop	missing

**Slots**

id	unique ID for node in tree['ndlst']
spn	length of preceding branch
prid	parent node ID
ptid	child node ID
kids	descending tip IDs
nkids	number of descending tip IDs
txnym	list of associated taxonyms
pd	total branch length represented by node
prdst	total branch length of connected prids
root	T/F root node?
tip	T/F tip node?

**See Also**

[TreeMan-class](#), [TreeMen-class](#)

---

obj_check	<i>Check if an object exists</i>
-----------	----------------------------------

---

**Description**

Check if an object exists in the cache.

**Usage**

```
obj_check(wd, nm)
```

**Arguments**

wd	Working directory
nm	Object name



**Value**

T/F

**See Also**

Other run-private: [batcher\(\)](#), [blast\\_clstr\(\)](#), [blast\\_filter\(\)](#), [blast\\_setup\(\)](#), [blast\\_sqz\(\)](#), [blastcache\\_load\(\)](#), [blastcache\\_save\(\)](#), [blastdb\\_gen\(\)](#), [blastn\\_run\(\)](#), [cache\\_rm\(\)](#), [cache\\_setup\(\)](#), [clade\\_select\(\)](#), [clstr2\\_calc\(\)](#), [clstr\\_all\(\)](#), [clstr\\_direct\(\)](#), [clstr\\_sqz\(\)](#), [clstr\\_subtree\(\)](#), [clstrarc\\_gen\(\)](#), [clstrarc\\_join\(\)](#), [clstrrec\\_gen\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_calc\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_join\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_merge\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_renumber\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_save\(\)](#), [cmdln\(\)](#), [descendants\\_get\(\)](#), [download\\_obj\\_check\(\)](#), [error\(\)](#), [gb\\_extract\(\)](#), [hierarchic\\_download\(\)](#), [info\(\)](#), [ncbocache\\_load\(\)](#), [ncbocache\\_save\(\)](#), [obj\\_load\(\)](#), [obj\\_save\(\)](#), [outfmt\\_get\(\)](#), [parameters\\_load\(\)](#), [parameters\\_setup\(\)](#), [parent\\_get\(\)](#), [progress\\_init\(\)](#), [progress\\_read\(\)](#), [progress\\_reset\(\)](#), [progress\\_save\(\)](#), [rank\\_get\(\)](#), [rawseqrec\\_breakdown\(\)](#), [safely\\_connect\(\)](#), [search\\_and\\_cache\(\)](#), [searchterm\\_gen\(\)](#), [seeds\\_blast\(\)](#), [seq\\_download\(\)](#), [seqarc\\_gen\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_augment\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_convert\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_gen\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_get\(\)](#), [sids\\_check\(\)](#), [sids\\_get\(\)](#), [sids\\_load\(\)](#), [sids\\_save\(\)](#), [sqz\\_count\(\)](#), [sqz\\_save\(\)](#), [stage\\_args\\_check\(\)](#), [stages\\_run\(\)](#), [tax\\_download\(\)](#), [taxdict\\_gen\(\)](#), [taxtree\\_gen\(\)](#), [txids\\_get\(\)](#), [txnds\\_count\(\)](#), [warn\(\)](#)

---

`obj_load`*Load a named object from the cache*

---

**Description**

Loads an object from the cache as stored by `obj_save`.

**Usage**

```
obj_load(wd, nm)
```

**Arguments**

<code>wd</code>	Working directory
<code>nm</code>	Object name

**Value**

object, multiple formats possible

**See Also**

Other run-private: [batcher\(\)](#), [blast\\_clstr\(\)](#), [blast\\_filter\(\)](#), [blast\\_setup\(\)](#), [blast\\_sqz\(\)](#), [blastcache\\_load\(\)](#), [blastcache\\_save\(\)](#), [blastdb\\_gen\(\)](#), [blastn\\_run\(\)](#), [cache\\_rm\(\)](#), [cache\\_setup\(\)](#), [clade\\_select\(\)](#), [clstr2\\_calc\(\)](#), [clstr\\_all\(\)](#), [clstr\\_direct\(\)](#), [clstr\\_sqz\(\)](#), [clstr\\_subtree\(\)](#), [clstrarc\\_gen\(\)](#), [clstrarc\\_join\(\)](#), [clstrrec\\_gen\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_calc\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_join\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_merge\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_renumber\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_save\(\)](#), [cmdln\(\)](#), [descendants\\_get\(\)](#), [download\\_obj\\_check\(\)](#), [error\(\)](#), [gb\\_extract\(\)](#), [hierarchic\\_download\(\)](#), [info\(\)](#), [ncbocache\\_load\(\)](#), [ncbocache\\_save\(\)](#), [obj\\_check\(\)](#), [obj\\_save\(\)](#), [outfmt\\_get\(\)](#), [parameters\\_load\(\)](#), [parameters\\_setup\(\)](#), [parent\\_get\(\)](#),

[progress\\_init\(\)](#), [progress\\_read\(\)](#), [progress\\_reset\(\)](#), [progress\\_save\(\)](#), [rank\\_get\(\)](#), [rawseqrec\\_breakdown\(\)](#), [safely\\_connect\(\)](#), [search\\_and\\_cache\(\)](#), [searchterm\\_gen\(\)](#), [seeds\\_blast\(\)](#), [seq\\_download\(\)](#), [seqarc\\_gen\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_augment\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_convert\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_gen\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_get\(\)](#), [sids\\_check\(\)](#), [sids\\_get\(\)](#), [sids\\_load\(\)](#), [sids\\_save\(\)](#), [sqs\\_count\(\)](#), [sqs\\_save\(\)](#), [stage\\_args\\_check\(\)](#), [stages\\_run\(\)](#), [tax\\_download\(\)](#), [taxdict\\_gen\(\)](#), [taxtree\\_gen\(\)](#), [txids\\_get\(\)](#), [txnds\\_count\(\)](#), [warn\(\)](#)

---

obj\_save

*Save a named object in the cache*

---

## Description

Save an object in the cache that can be loaded by `obj_load`.

## Usage

```
obj_save(wd, obj, nm)
```

## Arguments

wd	Working directory
obj	Object
nm	Object name

## See Also

Other run-private: [batcher\(\)](#), [blast\\_clstr\(\)](#), [blast\\_filter\(\)](#), [blast\\_setup\(\)](#), [blast\\_sqs\(\)](#), [blastcache\\_load\(\)](#), [blastcache\\_save\(\)](#), [blastdb\\_gen\(\)](#), [blastn\\_run\(\)](#), [cache\\_rm\(\)](#), [cache\\_setup\(\)](#), [clade\\_select\(\)](#), [clstr2\\_calc\(\)](#), [clstr\\_all\(\)](#), [clstr\\_direct\(\)](#), [clstr\\_sqs\(\)](#), [clstr\\_subtree\(\)](#), [clstrarc\\_gen\(\)](#), [clstrarc\\_join\(\)](#), [clstrrec\\_gen\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_calc\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_join\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_merge\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_renumber\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_save\(\)](#), [cmdln\(\)](#), [descendants\\_get\(\)](#), [download\\_obj\\_check\(\)](#), [error\(\)](#), [gb\\_extract\(\)](#), [hierarchic\\_download\(\)](#), [info\(\)](#), [ncbocache\\_load\(\)](#), [ncbocache\\_save\(\)](#), [obj\\_check\(\)](#), [obj\\_load\(\)](#), [outfmt\\_get\(\)](#), [parameters\\_load\(\)](#), [parameters\\_setup\(\)](#), [parent\\_get\(\)](#), [progress\\_init\(\)](#), [progress\\_read\(\)](#), [progress\\_reset\(\)](#), [progress\\_save\(\)](#), [rank\\_get\(\)](#), [rawseqrec\\_breakdown\(\)](#), [safely\\_connect\(\)](#), [search\\_and\\_cache\(\)](#), [searchterm\\_gen\(\)](#), [seeds\\_blast\(\)](#), [seq\\_download\(\)](#), [seqarc\\_gen\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_augment\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_convert\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_gen\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_get\(\)](#), [sids\\_check\(\)](#), [sids\\_get\(\)](#), [sids\\_load\(\)](#), [sids\\_save\(\)](#), [sqs\\_count\(\)](#), [sqs\\_save\(\)](#), [stage\\_args\\_check\(\)](#), [stages\\_run\(\)](#), [tax\\_download\(\)](#), [taxdict\\_gen\(\)](#), [taxtree\\_gen\(\)](#), [txids\\_get\(\)](#), [txnds\\_count\(\)](#), [warn\(\)](#)

---

outfmt_get	<i>Determine 'outformat' format</i>
------------	-------------------------------------

---

**Description**

Depending on operating system, BLAST may or may not require "" around outfmt. This function will run a micro BLAST analysis to test. It will return the outfmt for use in blastn\_run.

**Usage**

```
outfmt_get(ps)
```

**Arguments**

ps	Parameters list, generated with parameters()
----	--

**Value**

character

**See Also**

Other run-private: [batcher\(\)](#), [blast\\_clstr\(\)](#), [blast\\_filter\(\)](#), [blast\\_setup\(\)](#), [blast\\_sqns\(\)](#), [blastcache\\_load\(\)](#), [blastcache\\_save\(\)](#), [blastdb\\_gen\(\)](#), [blastn\\_run\(\)](#), [cache\\_rm\(\)](#), [cache\\_setup\(\)](#), [clade\\_select\(\)](#), [clstr2\\_calc\(\)](#), [clstr\\_all\(\)](#), [clstr\\_direct\(\)](#), [clstr\\_sqns\(\)](#), [clstr\\_subtree\(\)](#), [clstrarc\\_gen\(\)](#), [clstrarc\\_join\(\)](#), [clstrrec\\_gen\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_calc\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_join\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_merge\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_renumber\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_save\(\)](#), [cmdln\(\)](#), [descendants\\_get\(\)](#), [download\\_obj\\_check\(\)](#), [error\(\)](#), [gb\\_extract\(\)](#), [hierarchic\\_download\(\)](#), [info\(\)](#), [ncbocache\\_load\(\)](#), [ncbocache\\_save\(\)](#), [obj\\_check\(\)](#), [obj\\_load\(\)](#), [obj\\_save\(\)](#), [parameters\\_load\(\)](#), [parameters\\_setup\(\)](#), [parent\\_get\(\)](#), [progress\\_init\(\)](#), [progress\\_read\(\)](#), [progress\\_reset\(\)](#), [progress\\_save\(\)](#), [rank\\_get\(\)](#), [rawseqrec\\_breakdown\(\)](#), [safely\\_connect\(\)](#), [search\\_and\\_cache\(\)](#), [searchterm\\_gen\(\)](#), [seeds\\_blast\(\)](#), [seq\\_download\(\)](#), [seqarc\\_gen\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_augment\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_convert\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_gen\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_get\(\)](#), [sids\\_check\(\)](#), [sids\\_get\(\)](#), [sids\\_load\(\)](#), [sids\\_save\(\)](#), [sqns\\_count\(\)](#), [sqns\\_save\(\)](#), [stage\\_args\\_check\(\)](#), [stages\\_run\(\)](#), [tax\\_download\(\)](#), [taxdict\\_gen\(\)](#), [taxtree\\_gen\(\)](#), [txids\\_get\(\)](#), [txnds\\_count\(\)](#), [warn\(\)](#)

---

parameters	<i>Default parameters</i>
------------	---------------------------

---

**Description**

Returns a parameter list with default parameter values.

**Usage**

```

parameters(
  wd = ".",
  txid = character(),
  mkblastdb = "",
  blastn = "",
  v = FALSE,
  ncps = 1,
  mxnds = 1e+05,
  mdlthrs = 3000,
  mnsql = 250,
  mxsql = 2000,
  mxrtry = 100,
  mxsqs = 50000,
  mxevl = 1e-10,
  mncvrg = 51,
  btchsz = 100,
  db_only = FALSE,
  outsider = FALSE,
  srch_trm = paste0("NOT predicted[TI] ", "NOT \"whole genome shotgun\"[TI] ",
    "NOT unverified[TI] ", "NOT \"synthetic construct\"[Organism] ",
    "NOT refseq[filter] NOT TSA[Keyword]"),
  date = Sys.Date()
)

```

**Arguments**

wd	The working directory where all output files are saved.
txid	Taxonomic group of interest, allows vectors.
mkblastdb	File path to makeblastdb
blastn	File path to blastn
v	Print progress statements to console? Statements will always be printed to log.txt.
ncps	The number of threads to use in the local-alignment search tool.
mxnds	The maximum number of nodes descending from a taxonomic group. If there are more than this number, nodes at the lower taxonomic level are analysed.
mdlthrs	'Model organism threshold'. Taxa with more sequences than this number will be considered model organisms and a random mdlthrs subset of their sequences will be downloaded.
mnsql	The minimum length of sequence in nucleotide base pairs to download.
mxsql	The maximum length of sequence in nucleotide base pairs to download. Any longer sequences will be ignored.
mxrtry	The maximum number of attempts to make when downloading.
mxsqs	The maximum number of sequences to BLAST in all-vs-all searches. If there are more sequences for a node, BLAST is performed at the lower taxonomic level.

mxevl	The maximum E-value for a successful BLAST.
mncvrg	The maximum percentile coverage defining an overlapping BLAST hit. Sequences with BLAST matches with lower values are not considered orthologous.
btchsz	Batch size when querying NCBI
db_only	Take sequences only from restez library? TRUE/FALSE. If TRUE, internet is still required (for taxonomic look-up) and a restez will need to be set up.
outsider	Use om. .blast? TRUE/FALSE. If TRUE, a module for running blastn will be installed and all BLAST commands will be run through it. outsider package is required.
srch_trm	Sequence NCBI search term modifier. Use this parameter to change the default search term options. Default: avoid predicted, WGS, unverified, synthetic, Ref-Seq and Transcriptome Shotgun Assembly sequences.
date	Date when pipeline was initiated

### Details

This function is NOT used to change the parameters in a folder. Use parameters\_reset() instead. The purpose of this function is to describe the parameters and present their default values.

### Value

list

---

parameters_load	<i>Load parameters from cache</i>
-----------------	-----------------------------------

---

### Description

Parameters are held in cache, use this function to load parameters set for a wd.

### Usage

```
parameters_load(wd)
```

### Arguments

wd	Working directory
----	-------------------

### Value

Parameters list

**See Also**

Other run-private: [batcher\(\)](#), [blast\\_clstr\(\)](#), [blast\\_filter\(\)](#), [blast\\_setup\(\)](#), [blast\\_sqs\(\)](#), [blastcache\\_load\(\)](#), [blastcache\\_save\(\)](#), [blastdb\\_gen\(\)](#), [blastn\\_run\(\)](#), [cache\\_rm\(\)](#), [cache\\_setup\(\)](#), [clade\\_select\(\)](#), [clstr2\\_calc\(\)](#), [clstr\\_all\(\)](#), [clstr\\_direct\(\)](#), [clstr\\_sqs\(\)](#), [clstr\\_subtree\(\)](#), [clstrarc\\_gen\(\)](#), [clstrarc\\_join\(\)](#), [clstrrec\\_gen\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_calc\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_join\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_merge\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_renumber\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_save\(\)](#), [cmdln\(\)](#), [descendants\\_get\(\)](#), [download\\_obj\\_check\(\)](#), [error\(\)](#), [gb\\_extract\(\)](#), [hierarchic\\_download\(\)](#), [info\(\)](#), [ncbocache\\_load\(\)](#), [ncbocache\\_save\(\)](#), [obj\\_check\(\)](#), [obj\\_load\(\)](#), [obj\\_save\(\)](#), [outfmt\\_get\(\)](#), [parameters\\_setup\(\)](#), [parent\\_get\(\)](#), [progress\\_init\(\)](#), [progress\\_read\(\)](#), [progress\\_reset\(\)](#), [progress\\_save\(\)](#), [rank\\_get\(\)](#), [rawseqrec\\_breakdown\(\)](#), [safely\\_connect\(\)](#), [search\\_and\\_cache\(\)](#), [searchterm\\_gen\(\)](#), [seeds\\_blast\(\)](#), [seq\\_download\(\)](#), [seqarc\\_gen\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_augment\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_convert\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_gen\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_get\(\)](#), [sids\\_check\(\)](#), [sids\\_get\(\)](#), [sids\\_load\(\)](#), [sids\\_save\(\)](#), [sqs\\_count\(\)](#), [sqs\\_save\(\)](#), [stage\\_args\\_check\(\)](#), [stages\\_run\(\)](#), [tax\\_download\(\)](#), [taxdict\\_gen\(\)](#), [taxtree\\_gen\(\)](#), [txids\\_get\(\)](#), [txnds\\_count\(\)](#), [warn\(\)](#)

---

parameters_reset	<i>Change parameters in a working directory</i>
------------------	---

---

**Description**

Reset parameters after running `setup()`.

**Usage**

```
parameters_reset(wd, parameters, values)
```

**Arguments**

wd	Working directory
parameters	Parameters to be changed, vector.
values	New values for each parameter, vector.

**See Also**

Other run-public: [ClstrArc-class](#), [ClstrRec-class](#), [Phylota-class](#), [SeqArc-class](#), [SeqRec-class](#), [TaxDict-class](#), [TaxRec-class](#), [clusters2\\_run\(\)](#), [clusters\\_run\(\)](#), [reset\(\)](#), [restart\(\)](#), [run\(\)](#), [setup\(\)](#), [taxise\\_run\(\)](#)

**Examples**

```
## Not run:

# Note: this example requires BLAST and internet to run.

# example with temp folder
wd <- file.path(tempdir(), 'aotus')
# setup for aotus, make sure aotus/ folder already exists
if (!dir.exists(wd)) {
```

```

    dir.create(wd)
  }
  ncbi_dr <- '[SET BLAST+ BIN PATH HERE]'
  setup(wd = wd, txid = 9504, ncbi_dr = ncbi_dr) # txid for Aotus primate genus
  # run
  # run(wd = wd) # not running in test
  # use ctrl+c or Esc to kill
  # change parameters, e.g. min and max sequence lengths
  parameters_reset(wd = 'aotus', parameters = c('mnsql', 'mxsql'),
                  values = c(300, 1500))
  # see ?parameters
  # restart
  restart(wd = wd)

## End(Not run)

```

---

parameters_setup	<i>Set Up Parameters</i>
------------------	--------------------------

---

## Description

Initiates cache of parameters.

## Usage

```
parameters_setup(wd, ncbi_execs, overwrite = FALSE, ...)
```

## Arguments

wd	Working directory
ncbi_execs	File directories for NCBI tools, see <code>blast_setup()</code>
overwrite	Overwrite existing cache?
...	Set parameters, see <code>parameters()</code>

## See Also

Other run-private: [batcher\(\)](#), [blast\\_clstr\(\)](#), [blast\\_filter\(\)](#), [blast\\_setup\(\)](#), [blast\\_sqsl\(\)](#), [blastcache\\_load\(\)](#), [blastcache\\_save\(\)](#), [blastdb\\_gen\(\)](#), [blastn\\_run\(\)](#), [cache\\_rm\(\)](#), [cache\\_setup\(\)](#), [clade\\_select\(\)](#), [clstr2\\_calc\(\)](#), [clstr\\_all\(\)](#), [clstr\\_direct\(\)](#), [clstr\\_sqsl\(\)](#), [clstr\\_subtree\(\)](#), [clstrarc\\_gen\(\)](#), [clstrarc\\_join\(\)](#), [clstrrec\\_gen\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_calc\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_join\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_merge\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_renumber\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_save\(\)](#), [cmdln\(\)](#), [descendants\\_get\(\)](#), [download\\_obj\\_check\(\)](#), [error\(\)](#), [gb\\_extract\(\)](#), [hierarchic\\_download\(\)](#), [info\(\)](#), [ncbicache\\_load\(\)](#), [ncbicache\\_save\(\)](#), [obj\\_check\(\)](#), [obj\\_load\(\)](#), [obj\\_save\(\)](#), [outfmt\\_get\(\)](#), [parameters\\_load\(\)](#), [parent\\_get\(\)](#), [progress\\_init\(\)](#), [progress\\_read\(\)](#), [progress\\_reset\(\)](#), [progress\\_save\(\)](#), [rank\\_get\(\)](#), [rawseqrec\\_breakdown\(\)](#), [safely\\_connect\(\)](#), [search\\_and\\_cache\(\)](#), [searchterm\\_gen\(\)](#), [seeds\\_blast\(\)](#), [seq\\_download\(\)](#), [seqarc\\_gen\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_augment\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_convert\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_gen\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_get\(\)](#), [sids\\_check\(\)](#), [sids\\_get\(\)](#), [sids\\_load\(\)](#), [sids\\_save\(\)](#), [sqsl\\_count\(\)](#), [sqsl\\_save\(\)](#), [stage\\_args\\_check\(\)](#), [stages\\_run\(\)](#), [tax\\_download\(\)](#), [taxdict\\_gen\(\)](#), [taxtree\\_gen\(\)](#), [txids\\_get\(\)](#), [txnds\\_count\(\)](#), [warn\(\)](#)

---

parent_get	<i>Get taxonomic parent</i>
------------	-----------------------------

---

**Description**

Look-up MRCA of taxonomic id(s) from taxonomic dictionary

**Usage**

```
parent_get(id, txdct)
```

**Arguments**

id	txid(s)
txdct	TaxDict

**Value**

Character

**See Also**

Other run-private: [batcher\(\)](#), [blast\\_clstr\(\)](#), [blast\\_filter\(\)](#), [blast\\_setup\(\)](#), [blast\\_sqs\(\)](#), [blastcache\\_load\(\)](#), [blastcache\\_save\(\)](#), [blastdb\\_gen\(\)](#), [blastn\\_run\(\)](#), [cache\\_rm\(\)](#), [cache\\_setup\(\)](#), [clade\\_select\(\)](#), [clstr2\\_calc\(\)](#), [clstr\\_all\(\)](#), [clstr\\_direct\(\)](#), [clstr\\_sqs\(\)](#), [clstr\\_subtree\(\)](#), [clstrarc\\_gen\(\)](#), [clstrarc\\_join\(\)](#), [clstrrec\\_gen\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_calc\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_join\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_merge\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_renumber\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_save\(\)](#), [cmdln\(\)](#), [descendants\\_get\(\)](#), [download\\_obj\\_check\(\)](#), [error\(\)](#), [gb\\_extract\(\)](#), [hierarchic\\_download\(\)](#), [info\(\)](#), [ncbocache\\_load\(\)](#), [ncbocache\\_save\(\)](#), [obj\\_check\(\)](#), [obj\\_load\(\)](#), [obj\\_save\(\)](#), [outfmt\\_get\(\)](#), [parameters\\_load\(\)](#), [parameters\\_setup\(\)](#), [progress\\_init\(\)](#), [progress\\_read\(\)](#), [progress\\_reset\(\)](#), [progress\\_save\(\)](#), [rank\\_get\(\)](#), [rawseqrec\\_breakdown\(\)](#), [safely\\_connect\(\)](#), [search\\_and\\_cache\(\)](#), [searchterm\\_gen\(\)](#), [seeds\\_blast\(\)](#), [seq\\_download\(\)](#), [seqarc\\_gen\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_augment\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_convert\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_gen\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_get\(\)](#), [sids\\_check\(\)](#), [sids\\_get\(\)](#), [sids\\_load\(\)](#), [sids\\_save\(\)](#), [sqs\\_count\(\)](#), [sqs\\_save\(\)](#), [stage\\_args\\_check\(\)](#), [stages\\_run\(\)](#), [tax\\_download\(\)](#), [taxdict\\_gen\(\)](#), [taxtree\\_gen\(\)](#), [txids\\_get\(\)](#), [txnds\\_count\(\)](#), [warn\(\)](#)

---

phylo-class	<i>phylo class</i>
-------------	--------------------

---

**Description**

phylo class



---

phylo-to-TreeMan      *Convert phylo to TreeMan*

---

### Description

Return a TreeMan from ape's phylo. This will preserve node labels, if they are alphanumeric.

### See Also

[TreeMan-to-phylo](#), [TreeMen-to-multiPhylo](#) [multiPhylo-to-TreeMen](#) [TreeMan-class](#)

### Examples

```
library(ape)
tree <- compute.brLen(rtree(10))
tree <- as(tree, "TreeMan")
```

---

Phylota-class      *Phylota object*

---

### Description

Phylota table contains all sequence, cluster and taxonomic information from a phylotaR pipeline run.

### Usage

```
## S4 method for signature 'Phylota'
as.character(x)

## S4 method for signature 'Phylota'
show(object)

## S4 method for signature 'Phylota'
print(x)

## S4 method for signature 'Phylota'
str(object, max.level = 2L, ...)

## S4 method for signature 'Phylota'
summary(object)

## S4 method for signature 'Phylota,character'
x[[i]]
```

**Arguments**

x	Phylota object
object	Phylota object
max.level	Maximum level of nesting for str()
...	Further arguments for str()
i	Either sid or cid

**Slots**

cids	IDs of all clusters
sids	IDs of all sequences
txids	IDs of all taxa
sqs	All sequence records as SeqArc
clstrs	All cluster records as ClstrArc
txdct	Taxonomic dictionary as TaxDict
prnt_id	Parent taxonomic ID
prnt_nm	Parent taxonomic name

**See Also**

Other run-public: [ClstrArc-class](#), [ClstrRec-class](#), [SeqArc-class](#), [SeqRec-class](#), [TaxDict-class](#), [TaxRec-class](#), [clusters2\\_run\(\)](#), [clusters\\_run\(\)](#), [parameters\\_reset\(\)](#), [reset\(\)](#), [restart\(\)](#), [run\(\)](#), [setup\(\)](#), [taxise\\_run\(\)](#)

**Examples**

```
data('aotus')
# this is a Phylota object
# it contains cluster, sequence and taxonomic information from a phylotaR run
show(aotus)
# you can access its different data slots with @
aotus@cids # cluster IDs
aotus@sids # sequence IDs
aotus@txids # taxonomic IDs
aotus@clstrs # clusters archive
aotus@sqs # sequence archive
aotus@txdct # taxonomic dictionary
# see all of the available slots
(slotNames(aotus))
# access different sequences and clusters with [[
(aotus[['0']]) # cluster record 0
(aotus[[aotus@sids[[1]]]]) # first sequence record
# get a summary of the whole object
(summary(aotus))
# the above generates a data.frame with information on each cluster:
# ID - unique id in the object
# Type - cluster type
```

```

# Seed - most connected sequence
# Parent - MRCA of all represented taxa
# N_taxa - number of NCBI recognised taxa
# N_seqs - number of sequences
# Med_sql - median sequence length
# MAD - Maximum alignment density, values close to 1 indicate all sequences in
# the cluster have a similar length.
# Definition - most common words (and frequency) in sequence definitions
# Feature - most common feature name (and frequency)

```

---

pinTips

*Pin tips to a tree*


---

## Description

Returns a tree with new tips added based on given lineages and time points

## Usage

```
pinTips(tree, tids, lngs, end_ages, tree_age)
```

## Arguments

tree	TreeMan object
tids	new tip ids
lngs	list of vectors of the lineages of each tid (ordered high to low rank)
end_ages	end time points for each tid
tree_age	age of tree

## Details

User must provide a vector of new tip IDs, a list of the ranked lineages for these IDs (in ascending order) and a vector of end time points for each new ID (0s for extant tips). The function expects the given tree to be taxonomically informed; the `txnym` slot for every node should have a taxonomic label. The function takes the lineage and tries to randomly add the new tip at the lowest point in the taxonomic rank before the end time point. Note, returned tree will not have a node matrix.

## See Also

`addTip`, `rmTips`, <https://github.com/DomBennett/treeman/wiki/manip-methods>

## Examples

```
# see https://github.com/DomBennett/treeman/wiki/Pinning-tips for a detailed example
```

---

plants	<i>plants</i>
--------	---------------

---

**Description**

plants

**Format**

A TreeMan or Phylota object

**Examples**

```
data("plants")
```

---

plot_phylota_pa	<i>Plot presence/absence matrix</i>
-----------------	-------------------------------------

---

**Description**

Plot presence/absence of taxa by each cluster in phylota object.

**Usage**

```
plot_phylota_pa(phylota, cids, txids, cnms = cids, txnms = txids)
```

**Arguments**

phylota	Phylota object
cids	Vector of cluster IDs
txids	Vector of taxonomic IDs
cnms	Cluster names
txnms	Taxonomic names

**Details**

Cluster names and taxonomic names can be given to the function, by default IDs are used.

**Value**

geom\_object

**See Also**

Other tools-public: [calc\\_mad\(\)](#), [calc\\_wrdfrq\(\)](#), [drop\\_by\\_rank\(\)](#), [drop\\_clstrs\(\)](#), [drop\\_sqs\(\)](#), [get\\_clstr\\_slot\(\)](#), [get\\_nsqs\(\)](#), [get\\_ntaxa\(\)](#), [get\\_sq\\_slot\(\)](#), [get\\_stage\\_times\(\)](#), [get\\_tx\\_slot\(\)](#), [get\\_txids\(\)](#), [is\\_txid\\_in\\_clstr\(\)](#), [is\\_txid\\_in\\_sq\(\)](#), [list\\_clstrrec\\_slots\(\)](#), [list\\_ncbi\\_ranks\(\)](#), [list\\_seqrec\\_slots\(\)](#), [list\\_taxrec\\_slots\(\)](#), [plot\\_phylota\\_treemap\(\)](#), [read\\_phylota\(\)](#), [write\\_sqs\(\)](#)

**Examples**

```
library(phylotaR)
data(cycads)
# drop all but first ten
cycads <- drop_clstrs(cycads, cycads@cids[1:10])
# plot all
p <- plot_phylota_pa(phylota = cycads, cids = cycads@cids, txids = cycads@txids)
print(p) # lots of information, difficult to interpret
# get genus-level taxonomic names
genus_txids <- get_txids(cycads, txids = cycads@txids, rnk = 'genus')
genus_txids <- unique(genus_txids)
# dropping missing
genus_txids <- genus_txids[genus_txids != '']
genus_nms <- get_tx_slot(cycads, genus_txids, slt_nm = 'scnm')
# make alphabetical for plotting
genus_nms <- sort(genus_nms, decreasing = TRUE)
# generate geom_object
p <- plot_phylota_pa(phylota = cycads, cids = cycads@cids, txids = genus_txids,
                    txnms = genus_nms)
# plot
print(p) # easier to interpret
```

---

plot\_phylota\_treemap *Plot treemap of Phylota object*

---

**Description**

Treemaps show relative size with boxes. The user can explore which taxa or clusters are most represented either by sequence or cluster number. If cluster IDs are provided, the plot is made for clusters. If taxonomic IDs are provided, the plot is made for taxa.

**Usage**

```
plot_phylota_treemap(
  phylota,
  cids = NULL,
  txids = NULL,
  cnms = cids,
  txnms = txids,
  with_labels = TRUE,
  area = c("ntx", "nsq", "ncl"),
  fill = c("NULL", "typ", "ntx", "nsq", "ncl")
)
```



---

progress_init	<i>Initialise progress list in cache</i>
---------------	--

---

**Description**

Creates a progress list recording each stage run in cache.

**Usage**

```
progress_init(wd)
```

**Arguments**

wd	Working directory
----	-------------------

**See Also**

Other run-private: [batcher\(\)](#), [blast\\_clstr\(\)](#), [blast\\_filter\(\)](#), [blast\\_setup\(\)](#), [blast\\_sqs\(\)](#), [blastcache\\_load\(\)](#), [blastcache\\_save\(\)](#), [blastdb\\_gen\(\)](#), [blastn\\_run\(\)](#), [cache\\_rm\(\)](#), [cache\\_setup\(\)](#), [clade\\_select\(\)](#), [clstr2\\_calc\(\)](#), [clstr\\_all\(\)](#), [clstr\\_direct\(\)](#), [clstr\\_sqs\(\)](#), [clstr\\_subtree\(\)](#), [clstrarc\\_gen\(\)](#), [clstrarc\\_join\(\)](#), [clstrrec\\_gen\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_calc\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_join\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_merge\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_renumber\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_save\(\)](#), [cmdln\(\)](#), [descendants\\_get\(\)](#), [download\\_obj\\_check\(\)](#), [error\(\)](#), [gb\\_extract\(\)](#), [hierarchic\\_download\(\)](#), [info\(\)](#), [ncbocache\\_load\(\)](#), [ncbocache\\_save\(\)](#), [obj\\_check\(\)](#), [obj\\_load\(\)](#), [obj\\_save\(\)](#), [outfmt\\_get\(\)](#), [parameters\\_load\(\)](#), [parameters\\_setup\(\)](#), [parent\\_get\(\)](#), [progress\\_read\(\)](#), [progress\\_reset\(\)](#), [progress\\_save\(\)](#), [rank\\_get\(\)](#), [rawseqrec\\_breakdown\(\)](#), [safely\\_connect\(\)](#), [search\\_and\\_cache\(\)](#), [searchterm\\_gen\(\)](#), [seeds\\_blast\(\)](#), [seq\\_download\(\)](#), [seqarc\\_gen\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_augment\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_convert\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_gen\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_get\(\)](#), [sids\\_check\(\)](#), [sids\\_get\(\)](#), [sids\\_load\(\)](#), [sids\\_save\(\)](#), [sqs\\_count\(\)](#), [sqs\\_save\(\)](#), [stage\\_args\\_check\(\)](#), [stages\\_run\(\)](#), [tax\\_download\(\)](#), [taxdict\\_gen\(\)](#), [taxtree\\_gen\(\)](#), [txids\\_get\(\)](#), [txnds\\_count\(\)](#), [warn\(\)](#)

---

progress_read	<i>Read the progress from cache</i>
---------------	-------------------------------------

---

**Description**

Return the last completed stage using the cache.

**Usage**

```
progress_read(wd)
```

**Arguments**

wd	Working directory
----	-------------------

**Value**

stage name, character, or NA is complete

**See Also**

Other run-private: `batcher()`, `blast_clstr()`, `blast_filter()`, `blast_setup()`, `blast_sqts()`, `blastcache_load()`, `blastcache_save()`, `blastdb_gen()`, `blastn_run()`, `cache_rm()`, `cache_setup()`, `clade_select()`, `clstr2_calc()`, `clstr_all()`, `clstr_direct()`, `clstr_sqts()`, `clstr_subtree()`, `clstrarc_gen()`, `clstrarc_join()`, `clstrrec_gen()`, `clstrs_calc()`, `clstrs_join()`, `clstrs_merge()`, `clstrs_renumber()`, `clstrs_save()`, `cmdln()`, `descendants_get()`, `download_obj_check()`, `error()`, `gb_extract()`, `hierarchic_download()`, `info()`, `ncbocache_load()`, `ncbocache_save()`, `obj_check()`, `obj_load()`, `obj_save()`, `outfmt_get()`, `parameters_load()`, `parameters_setup()`, `parent_get()`, `progress_init()`, `progress_reset()`, `progress_save()`, `rank_get()`, `rawseqrec_breakdown()`, `safely_connect()`, `search_and_cache()`, `searchterm_gen()`, `seeds_blast()`, `seq_download()`, `seqarc_gen()`, `seqrec_augment()`, `seqrec_convert()`, `seqrec_gen()`, `seqrec_get()`, `sids_check()`, `sids_get()`, `sids_load()`, `sids_save()`, `sqts_count()`, `sqts_save()`, `stage_args_check()`, `stages_run()`, `tax_download()`, `taxdict_gen()`, `taxtree_gen()`, `txids_get()`, `txnds_count()`, `warn()`

---

progress\_reset

*Reset progress*

---

**Description**

Reset progress to an earlier completed stage.

**Usage**

```
progress_reset(wd, stg)
```

**Arguments**

wd	Working directory
stg	Stage to which the pipeline will be reset

**Details**

For example, resetting the progress to 'download' mark stages 'download', 'cluster' and 'cluster2' as un-run.

**See Also**

Other run-private: `batcher()`, `blast_clstr()`, `blast_filter()`, `blast_setup()`, `blast_sqts()`, `blastcache_load()`, `blastcache_save()`, `blastdb_gen()`, `blastn_run()`, `cache_rm()`, `cache_setup()`, `clade_select()`, `clstr2_calc()`, `clstr_all()`, `clstr_direct()`, `clstr_sqts()`, `clstr_subtree()`, `clstrarc_gen()`, `clstrarc_join()`, `clstrrec_gen()`, `clstrs_calc()`, `clstrs_join()`, `clstrs_merge()`, `clstrs_renumber()`, `clstrs_save()`, `cmdln()`, `descendants_get()`, `download_obj_check()`, `error()`, `gb_extract()`, `hierarchic_download()`, `info()`, `ncbocache_load()`, `ncbocache_save()`,



obj\_check(), obj\_load(), obj\_save(), outfmt\_get(), parameters\_load(), parameters\_setup(), parent\_get(), progress\_init(), progress\_read(), progress\_save(), rank\_get(), rawseqrec\_breakdown(), safely\_connect(), search\_and\_cache(), searchterm\_gen(), seeds\_blast(), seq\_download(), seqarc\_gen(), seqrec\_augment(), seqrec\_convert(), seqrec\_gen(), seqrec\_get(), sids\_check(), sids\_get(), sids\_load(), sids\_save(), sqs\_count(), sqs\_save(), stage\_args\_check(), stages\_run(), tax\_download(), taxdict\_gen(), taxtree\_gen(), txids\_get(), txnds\_count(), warn()

---

progress_save	<i>Save current progress</i>
---------------	------------------------------

---

## Description

Stores the pipeline progress in the cache.

## Usage

```
progress_save(wd, stg)
```

## Arguments

wd	Working directory
stg	Stage

## See Also

Other run-private: [batcher\(\)](#), [blast\\_clstr\(\)](#), [blast\\_filter\(\)](#), [blast\\_setup\(\)](#), [blast\\_sqs\(\)](#), [blastcache\\_load\(\)](#), [blastcache\\_save\(\)](#), [blastdb\\_gen\(\)](#), [blastn\\_run\(\)](#), [cache\\_rm\(\)](#), [cache\\_setup\(\)](#), [clade\\_select\(\)](#), [clstr2\\_calc\(\)](#), [clstr\\_all\(\)](#), [clstr\\_direct\(\)](#), [clstr\\_sqs\(\)](#), [clstr\\_subtree\(\)](#), [clstrarc\\_gen\(\)](#), [clstrarc\\_join\(\)](#), [clstrrec\\_gen\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_calc\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_join\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_merge\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_renumber\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_save\(\)](#), [cmdln\(\)](#), [descendants\\_get\(\)](#), [download\\_obj\\_check\(\)](#), [error\(\)](#), [gb\\_extract\(\)](#), [hierarchic\\_download\(\)](#), [info\(\)](#), [ncbocache\\_load\(\)](#), [ncbocache\\_save\(\)](#), [obj\\_check\(\)](#), [obj\\_load\(\)](#), [obj\\_save\(\)](#), [outfmt\\_get\(\)](#), [parameters\\_load\(\)](#), [parameters\\_setup\(\)](#), [parent\\_get\(\)](#), [progress\\_init\(\)](#), [progress\\_read\(\)](#), [progress\\_reset\(\)](#), [rank\\_get\(\)](#), [rawseqrec\\_breakdown\(\)](#), [safely\\_connect\(\)](#), [search\\_and\\_cache\(\)](#), [searchterm\\_gen\(\)](#), [seeds\\_blast\(\)](#), [seq\\_download\(\)](#), [seqarc\\_gen\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_augment\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_convert\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_gen\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_get\(\)](#), [sids\\_check\(\)](#), [sids\\_get\(\)](#), [sids\\_load\(\)](#), [sids\\_save\(\)](#), [sqs\\_count\(\)](#), [sqs\\_save\(\)](#), [stage\\_args\\_check\(\)](#), [stages\\_run\(\)](#), [tax\\_download\(\)](#), [taxdict\\_gen\(\)](#), [taxtree\\_gen\(\)](#), [txids\\_get\(\)](#), [txnds\\_count\(\)](#), [warn\(\)](#)

---

pstMnp                      *Update prinds and tinds*

---

**Description**

Return tree with updated slots.

**Usage**

```
pstMnp(tree)
```

**Arguments**

tree                      TreeMan object

**Details**

This function is automatically run. Only run, if you are creating yor own functions to add and remove elements of the nd1st.

**See Also**

[updateSlts](#), [addNdmtrx](#), [getAge](#)

---

randTree                      *Generate a random tree*

---

**Description**

Returns a random TreeMan tree with n tips.

**Usage**

```
randTree(n, wndmtrx = FALSE, parallel = FALSE)
```

**Arguments**

n                          number of tips, integer, must be 3 or greater  
 wndmtrx                  T/F add node matrix? Default FALSE.  
 parallel                  T/F run in parallel? Default FALSE.

**Details**

Equivalent to ape's rtree() but returns a TreeMan tree. Tree is always rooted and bifurcating.

**See Also**

[TreeMan-class](#), [blncdTree](#), [unblncdTree](#)

**Examples**

```
tree <- randTree(5)
```

---

rank\_get

*Get rank*

---

**Description**

Look-up taxonomic rank from dictionary.

**Usage**

```
rank_get(txid, txdct)
```

**Arguments**

txid	txid
txdct	TaxDict

**Value**

character

**See Also**

Other run-private: [batcher\(\)](#), [blast\\_clstr\(\)](#), [blast\\_filter\(\)](#), [blast\\_setup\(\)](#), [blast\\_sqc\(\)](#), [blastcache\\_load\(\)](#), [blastcache\\_save\(\)](#), [blastdb\\_gen\(\)](#), [blastn\\_run\(\)](#), [cache\\_rm\(\)](#), [cache\\_setup\(\)](#), [clade\\_select\(\)](#), [clstr2\\_calc\(\)](#), [clstr\\_all\(\)](#), [clstr\\_direct\(\)](#), [clstr\\_sqc\(\)](#), [clstr\\_subtree\(\)](#), [clstrarc\\_gen\(\)](#), [clstrarc\\_join\(\)](#), [clstrrec\\_gen\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_calc\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_join\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_merge\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_renumber\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_save\(\)](#), [cmdln\(\)](#), [descendants\\_get\(\)](#), [download\\_obj\\_check\(\)](#), [error\(\)](#), [gb\\_extract\(\)](#), [hierarchic\\_download\(\)](#), [info\(\)](#), [ncbocache\\_load\(\)](#), [ncbocache\\_save\(\)](#), [obj\\_check\(\)](#), [obj\\_load\(\)](#), [obj\\_save\(\)](#), [outfmt\\_get\(\)](#), [parameters\\_load\(\)](#), [parameters\\_setup\(\)](#), [parent\\_get\(\)](#), [progress\\_init\(\)](#), [progress\\_read\(\)](#), [progress\\_reset\(\)](#), [progress\\_save\(\)](#), [rawseqrec\\_breakdown\(\)](#), [safely\\_connect\(\)](#), [search\\_and\\_cache\(\)](#), [searchterm\\_gen\(\)](#), [seeds\\_blast\(\)](#), [seq\\_download\(\)](#), [seqarc\\_gen\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_augment\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_convert\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_gen\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_get\(\)](#), [sids\\_check\(\)](#), [sids\\_get\(\)](#), [sids\\_load\(\)](#), [sids\\_save\(\)](#), [sqc\\_count\(\)](#), [sqc\\_save\(\)](#), [stage\\_args\\_check\(\)](#), [stages\\_run\(\)](#), [tax\\_download\(\)](#), [taxdict\\_gen\(\)](#), [taxtree\\_gen\(\)](#), [txids\\_get\(\)](#), [txnds\\_count\(\)](#), [warn\(\)](#)

---

rawseqrec\_breakdown     *Breakdown a sequence record into its features*

---

## Description

Takes GenBank record's elements and returns a SeqRec. For sequences with lots of features, the sequence is broken down into these features provided they are of the right size. Sequences are either returned as features or whole sequence records, never both.

## Usage

```
rawseqrec_breakdown(record_parts, ps)
```

## Arguments

record_parts	list of record elements from a GenBank record
ps	Parameters list, generated with parameters()

## Value

list of SeqRecs

## See Also

Other run-private: [batcher\(\)](#), [blast\\_clstr\(\)](#), [blast\\_filter\(\)](#), [blast\\_setup\(\)](#), [blast\\_sqc\(\)](#), [blastcache\\_load\(\)](#), [blastcache\\_save\(\)](#), [blastdb\\_gen\(\)](#), [blastn\\_run\(\)](#), [cache\\_rm\(\)](#), [cache\\_setup\(\)](#), [clade\\_select\(\)](#), [clstr2\\_calc\(\)](#), [clstr\\_all\(\)](#), [clstr\\_direct\(\)](#), [clstr\\_sqc\(\)](#), [clstr\\_subtree\(\)](#), [clstrarc\\_gen\(\)](#), [clstrarc\\_join\(\)](#), [clstrrec\\_gen\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_calc\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_join\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_merge\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_renumber\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_save\(\)](#), [cmdln\(\)](#), [descendants\\_get\(\)](#), [download\\_obj\\_check\(\)](#), [error\(\)](#), [gb\\_extract\(\)](#), [hierarchic\\_download\(\)](#), [info\(\)](#), [ncbocache\\_load\(\)](#), [ncbocache\\_save\(\)](#), [obj\\_check\(\)](#), [obj\\_load\(\)](#), [obj\\_save\(\)](#), [outfmt\\_get\(\)](#), [parameters\\_load\(\)](#), [parameters\\_setup\(\)](#), [parent\\_get\(\)](#), [progress\\_init\(\)](#), [progress\\_read\(\)](#), [progress\\_reset\(\)](#), [progress\\_save\(\)](#), [rank\\_get\(\)](#), [safely\\_connect\(\)](#), [search\\_and\\_cache\(\)](#), [searchterm\\_gen\(\)](#), [seeds\\_blast\(\)](#), [seq\\_download\(\)](#), [seqarc\\_gen\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_augment\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_convert\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_gen\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_get\(\)](#), [sids\\_check\(\)](#), [sids\\_get\(\)](#), [sids\\_load\(\)](#), [sids\\_save\(\)](#), [sqc\\_count\(\)](#), [sqc\\_save\(\)](#), [stage\\_args\\_check\(\)](#), [stages\\_run\(\)](#), [tax\\_download\(\)](#), [taxdict\\_gen\(\)](#), [taxtree\\_gen\(\)](#), [txids\\_get\(\)](#), [txnds\\_count\(\)](#), [warn\(\)](#)

---

readTree	<i>Read a Newick tree</i>
----------	---------------------------

---

## Description

Return a TreeMan or TreeMen object from a Newick treefile

## Usage

```
readTree(
  file = NULL,
  text = NULL,
  spcl_slt_nm = "Unknown",
  wndmtrx = FALSE,
  parallel = FALSE,
  progress = "none"
)
```

## Arguments

file	file path
text	Newick character string
spcl_slt_nm	name of special slot for internal node labels, default 'Unknown'.
wndmtrx	T/F add node matrix? Default FALSE.
parallel	logical, make parallel?
progress	name of the progress bar to use, see <a href="#">create_progress_bar</a>

## Details

Read a single or multiple trees from a file, or a text string. Parallelizable when reading multiple trees. The function will add any internal node labels in the Newick tree as a user-defined data slots. The name of this slot is defined with the `spcl_slt_nm`. These data can be accessed/manipulated with the `getNdsSlt()` function. Trees are always read as rooted. (Unrooted trees have polytomous root nodes.)

## See Also

[https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Newick\\_format](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Newick_format), [addNdmtrx](#), [writeTree](#), [randTree](#), [readTrmn](#), [writeTrmn](#), [saveTreeMan](#), [loadTreeMan](#)

## Examples

```
# tree string with internal node labels as bootstrap results
tree <- readTree(
  text = "((A:1.0,B:1.0)0.9:1.0,(C:1.0,D:1.0)0.8:1.0)0.7:1.0;",
  spcl_slt_nm = "bootstrap"
)
```

```
# retrieve bootstrap values by node
tree["bootstrap"]
```

---

readTrmn	<i>Read a .trmn tree</i>
----------	--------------------------

---

### Description

Return a TreeMan or TreeMen object from a .trmn treefile

### Usage

```
readTrmn(file, wndmtrx = FALSE, parallel = FALSE, progress = "none")
```

### Arguments

file	file path
wndmtrx	T/F add node matrix? Default FALSE.
parallel	logical, make parallel?
progress	name of the progress bar to use, see <a href="#">create_progress_bar</a>

### Details

Read a tree(s) from a file using the .trmn format. It is faster to read and write tree files using treeman with the .trmn file format. In addition it is possible to encode more information than possible with the Newick, e.g. any taxonomic information and additional slot names added to the tree are recorded in the file.

### See Also

[writeTrmn](#), [readTree](#), [writeTree](#), [randTree](#), [saveTreeMan](#), [loadTreeMan](#)

### Examples

```
tree <- randTree(10)
writeTrmn(tree, file = "test.trmn")
tree <- readTrmn("test.trmn")
file.remove("test.trmn")
```

---

read_phylota	<i>Generate a Phylota object in R</i>
--------------	---------------------------------------

---

**Description**

Creates a Phylota object containing information on clusters, sequences and taxonomy from the working directory of a completed pipeline.

**Usage**

```
read_phylota(wd)
```

**Arguments**

wd	Working directory
----	-------------------

**Value**

Phylota

**See Also**

Other tools-public: [calc\\_mad\(\)](#), [calc\\_wrdfreq\(\)](#), [drop\\_by\\_rank\(\)](#), [drop\\_clstrs\(\)](#), [drop\\_sqs\(\)](#), [get\\_clstr\\_slot\(\)](#), [get\\_nsqs\(\)](#), [get\\_ntaxa\(\)](#), [get\\_sq\\_slot\(\)](#), [get\\_stage\\_times\(\)](#), [get\\_tx\\_slot\(\)](#), [get\\_txids\(\)](#), [is\\_txid\\_in\\_clstr\(\)](#), [is\\_txid\\_in\\_sq\(\)](#), [list\\_clstrrec\\_slots\(\)](#), [list\\_ncbi\\_ranks\(\)](#), [list\\_seqrec\\_slots\(\)](#), [list\\_taxrec\\_slots\(\)](#), [plot\\_phylota\\_pa\(\)](#), [plot\\_phylota\\_treemap\(\)](#), [write\\_sqs\(\)](#)

**Examples**

```
## Not run:  
  
# Note, this example requires a wd with a completed phylotaR run  
phylota <- read_phylota(wd)  
  
## End(Not run)
```

---

reset	<i>Reset a phylotaR pipeline run</i>
-------	--------------------------------------

---

**Description**

Resets the pipeline to a specified stage.

**Usage**

```
reset(wd, stage, hard = FALSE)
```

**Arguments**

wd	Working directory
stage	Name of stage to which the pipeline will be reset
hard	T/F, delete all cached data?

**See Also**

Other run-public: [ClstrArc-class](#), [ClstrRec-class](#), [Phylota-class](#), [SeqArc-class](#), [SeqRec-class](#), [TaxDict-class](#), [TaxRec-class](#), [clusters2\\_run\(\)](#), [clusters\\_run\(\)](#), [parameters\\_reset\(\)](#), [restart\(\)](#), [run\(\)](#), [setup\(\)](#), [taxise\\_run\(\)](#)

**Examples**

```
## Not run:

# Note: this example requires BLAST and internet to run.

# example with temp folder
wd <- file.path(tempdir(), 'aotus')
# setup for aotus, make sure aotus/ folder already exists
if (!dir.exists(wd)) {
  dir.create(wd)
}
ncbi_dr <- '[SET BLAST+ BIN PATH HERE]'
setup(wd = wd, txid = 9504, ncbi_dr = ncbi_dr) # txid for Aotus primate genus
# individually run taxise
taxise_run(wd = wd)
# reset back to taxise as if it has not been run
reset(wd = 'aotus', stage = 'taxise')
# run taxise again ....
taxise_run(wd = wd)

## End(Not run)
```

---

restart

*Restart a phylotaR pipeline run*


---

**Description**

Restarts the running of a pipeline as started with run.

**Usage**

```
restart(wd, nstages = 4)
```

**Arguments**

wd	Working directory
nstages	Number of total stages to run, max 4.



**See Also**

Other run-public: [ClstrArc-class](#), [ClstrRec-class](#), [Phylota-class](#), [SeqArc-class](#), [SeqRec-class](#), [TaxDict-class](#), [TaxRec-class](#), [clusters2\\_run\(\)](#), [clusters\\_run\(\)](#), [parameters\\_reset\(\)](#), [reset\(\)](#), [run\(\)](#), [setup\(\)](#), [taxise\\_run\(\)](#)

**Examples**

```
## Not run:

# Note: this example requires BLAST and internet to run.

# example with temp folder
wd <- file.path(tempdir(), 'aotus')
# setup for aotus, make sure aotus/ folder already exists
if (!dir.exists(wd)) {
  dir.create(wd)
}
ncbi_dr <- '[SET BLAST+ BIN PATH HERE]'
setup(wd = wd, txid = 9504, ncbi_dr = ncbi_dr) # txid for Aotus primate genus
# run and stop after 10 seconds
R.utils::withTimeout(expr = {
  run(wd = wd)
}, timeout = 10)
# use ctrl+c or Esc to kill without a timelimit
# and restart with ....
restart(wd = wd)

## End(Not run)
```

---

 rmClade

*Remove a clade from a tree*


---

**Description**

Returns a tree with a clade removed

**Usage**

```
rmClade(tree, id)
```

**Arguments**

tree	TreeMan object
id	node ID parent of clade to be removed

**Details**

Inverse function of `getSubtree()`. Takes a tree and removes a clade based on an internal node specified. Node is specified with `id`, all descending nodes and tips are removed. The resulting tree will replace the missing clade with a tip of `id`.

**See Also**

[addClade](#), [getSubtree](#), [rmTips](#) <https://github.com/DomBennett/treeman/wiki/manip-methods>

**Examples**

```
t1 <- randTree(100)
# remove a clade
t2 <- rmClade(t1, "n2")
summary(t1)
summary(t2)
```

---

rmNdmtx

*Remove node matrix*

---

**Description**

Return tree with memory heavy node matrix removed.

**Usage**

```
rmNdmtx(tree)
```

**Arguments**

tree            TreeMan object

**Details**

Potential uses: reduce memory load of a tree, save tree using serialization methods.

**See Also**

[addNdmtx](#)

**Examples**

```
#
tree <- randTree(10)
summary(tree)
tree <- rmNdmtx(tree)
summary(tree)
```

---

rmNodes	<i>Remove nodes from a tree</i>
---------	---------------------------------

---

**Description**

Returns a tree with a node ID(s) removed

**Usage**

```
rmNodes(tree, nids, progress = "none")
```

**Arguments**

tree	TreeMan object
nids	internal node IDs
progress	name of the progress bar to use, see <a href="#">create_progress_bar</a>

**Details**

Removes nodes in a tree. Joins the nodes following to the nodes preceding the node to be removed. Creates polytomies. Warning: do not use this function to remove tip nodes, this create a corrupted tree.

**See Also**

[addTip](#), [rmTips](#), <https://github.com/DomBennett/treeman/wiki/manip-methods>

**Examples**

```
tree <- randTree(10)
tree <- rmNodes(tree, "n3")
summary(tree) # tree is now polytmous
```

---

rmOtherSlt	<i>Remove a user-defined slot</i>
------------	-----------------------------------

---

**Description**

Returns a tree with a user-defined tree slot removed.

**Usage**

```
rmOtherSlt(tree, slt_nm)
```

**Arguments**

tree	TreeMan object
slt_nm	name of slot to be removed

**Details**

A user can specify a new slot using the `setNdSlt()` function or upon reading a tree. This can be removed using this function by specifying the name of the slot to be removed.

**See Also**

[setNdOther](#), [setNdsOther](#), <https://github.com/DomBennett/treeman/wiki/set-methods>

**Examples**

```
tree <- randTree(10)
vals <- runif(min = 0, max = 1, n = tree["nall"])
tree <- setNdsOther(tree, tree["all"], vals, "confidence")
tree <- updateSlts(tree)
summary(tree)
tree <- rmOtherSlt(tree, "confidence")
tree <- updateSlts(tree)
summary(tree)
```

---

 rmTips

*Remove tips from a tree*


---

**Description**

Returns a tree with a tip ID(s) removed

**Usage**

```
rmTips(tree, tids, drp_intrnl = TRUE, progress = "none")
```

**Arguments**

tree	TreeMan object
tids	tip IDs
drp_intrnl	Boolean, drop internal branches, default FALSE
progress	name of the progress bar to use, see <a href="#">create_progress_bar</a>

**Details**

Removes tips in a tree. Set `drp_intrnl` to FALSE to convert internal nodes into new tips. Warning: do not use this function to remove internal nodes, this create a corrupted tree.

**See Also**

[addTip](#), [rmNodes](#), <https://github.com/DomBennett/treeman/wiki/manip-methods>

**Examples**

```
tree <- randTree(10)
tree <- rmTips(tree, "t1")
summary(tree)
# running the function using an internal
# node will create a corrupted tree
tree <- rmTips(tree, "n3")
# run summary() to make sure a change has
# not created a corruption
# summary(tree)
```

---

run	<i>Run phylotaR pipeline</i>
-----	------------------------------

---

**Description**

Run the entire phylotaR pipeline. All generated files will be stored in the wd. The process can be stopped at anytime and restarted with restart. nstages must be a numeric value representing the number of stages that will be run. Stages are run in the following order: 1 - taxise, 2 - download, 3 - cluster and 4 - cluster2.

For example, specifying nstages = 3, will run taxise, download and cluster. Stages can also be run individually, see linked functions below.

**Usage**

```
run(wd, nstages = 4)
```

**Arguments**

wd	Working directory
nstages	Number of total stages to run, max 4.

**See Also**

Other run-public: [ClstrArc-class](#), [ClstrRec-class](#), [Phylota-class](#), [SeqArc-class](#), [SeqRec-class](#), [TaxDict-class](#), [TaxRec-class](#), [clusters2\\_run\(\)](#), [clusters\\_run\(\)](#), [parameters\\_reset\(\)](#), [reset\(\)](#), [restart\(\)](#), [setup\(\)](#), [taxise\\_run\(\)](#)

**Examples**

```
## Not run:

# Note: this example requires BLAST and internet to run.

# example with temp folder
wd <- file.path(tempdir(), 'aotus')
# setup for aotus, make sure aotus/ folder already exists
if (!dir.exists(wd)) {
  dir.create(wd)
}
ncbi_dr <- '[SET BLAST+ BIN PATH HERE]'
# e.g. "/usr/local/ncbi/blast/bin/"
setup(wd = wd, txid = 9504, ncbi_dr = ncbi_dr) # txid for Aotus primate genus
run(wd = wd)

## End(Not run)
```

---

safely\_connect

*Safely run rentrez function*


---

**Description**

Safely run a rentrez function. If the query fails, the function will retry.

**Usage**

```
safely_connect(func, args, fnm, ps)
```

**Arguments**

func	rentrez function
args	rentrez function arguments, list
fnm	rentrez function name
ps	Parameters list, generated with parameters()

**Value**

rentrez function results

**See Also**

Other run-private: [batcher\(\)](#), [blast\\_clstr\(\)](#), [blast\\_filter\(\)](#), [blast\\_setup\(\)](#), [blast\\_sqz\(\)](#), [blastcache\\_load\(\)](#), [blastcache\\_save\(\)](#), [blastdb\\_gen\(\)](#), [blastn\\_run\(\)](#), [cache\\_rm\(\)](#), [cache\\_setup\(\)](#), [clade\\_select\(\)](#), [clstr2\\_calc\(\)](#), [clstr\\_all\(\)](#), [clstr\\_direct\(\)](#), [clstr\\_sqz\(\)](#), [clstr\\_subtree\(\)](#), [clstrarc\\_gen\(\)](#), [clstrarc\\_join\(\)](#), [clstrrec\\_gen\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_calc\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_join\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_merge\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_renumber\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_save\(\)](#), [cmdln\(\)](#), [descendants\\_get\(\)](#), [download\\_obj\\_check\(\)](#),

[error\(\)](#), [gb\\_extract\(\)](#), [hierarchic\\_download\(\)](#), [info\(\)](#), [ncbocache\\_load\(\)](#), [ncbocache\\_save\(\)](#), [obj\\_check\(\)](#), [obj\\_load\(\)](#), [obj\\_save\(\)](#), [outfmt\\_get\(\)](#), [parameters\\_load\(\)](#), [parameters\\_setup\(\)](#), [parent\\_get\(\)](#), [progress\\_init\(\)](#), [progress\\_read\(\)](#), [progress\\_reset\(\)](#), [progress\\_save\(\)](#), [rank\\_get\(\)](#), [rawseqrec\\_breakdown\(\)](#), [search\\_and\\_cache\(\)](#), [searchterm\\_gen\(\)](#), [seeds\\_blast\(\)](#), [seq\\_download\(\)](#), [seqarc\\_gen\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_augment\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_convert\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_gen\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_get\(\)](#), [sids\\_check\(\)](#), [sids\\_get\(\)](#), [sids\\_load\(\)](#), [sids\\_save\(\)](#), [sqs\\_count\(\)](#), [sqs\\_save\(\)](#), [stage\\_args\\_check\(\)](#), [stages\\_run\(\)](#), [tax\\_download\(\)](#), [taxdict\\_gen\(\)](#), [taxtree\\_gen\(\)](#), [txids\\_get\(\)](#), [txnds\\_count\(\)](#), [warn\(\)](#)

---

 saveTreeMan

*Save a TreeMan object in serialization format*


---

## Description

TreeMan equivalent to `save()` but able to handle node matrices.

## Usage

```
saveTreeMan(tree, file)
```

## Arguments

tree	TreeMan object
file	file path

## Details

It is not possible to use `save()` on TreeMan objects with node matrices. Node matrices are bigmemory matrices and are therefore outside the R environment, see bigmemory documentation for more information. Saving and loading a bigmemory matrix may cause memory issues in R and cause R to crash.

This function can safely store a TreeMan object with and without a node matrix. This function stores the tree using the serialization format and the node matrix as a hidden `.csv`. Both parts of the tree can be reloaded to an R environment with `loadTreeMan()`. The hidden node matrix filename is based on the file argument: `file + _ndmtrx`

Reading and writing trees with `saveTreeMan()` and `loadTreeMan` is faster than any of the other read and write functions.

## See Also

[loadTreeMan](#), [readTree](#), [writeTree](#), [readTrmn](#), [writeTrmn](#)

## Examples

```
tree <- randTree(100, wndmtrx = TRUE)
saveTreeMan(tree, file = "test.RData")
rm(tree)
tree <- loadTreeMan(file = "test.RData")
file.remove("test.RData", "testRData_ndmtrx")
```

---

searchterm_gen	<i>Construct GenBank Search Term</i>
----------------	--------------------------------------

---

### Description

Construct search term for searching GenBank's nucleotide database. Limits the maximum size of sequences, avoids whole genome shotguns, predicted, unverified and synthetic sequences.

### Usage

```
searchterm_gen(txid, ps, direct = FALSE)
```

### Arguments

txid	Taxonomic ID
ps	Parameters list, generated with parameters()
direct	Node-level only or subtree as well? Default FALSE.

### Value

character, search term

### See Also

Other run-private: [batcher\(\)](#), [blast\\_clstr\(\)](#), [blast\\_filter\(\)](#), [blast\\_setup\(\)](#), [blast\\_sqs\(\)](#), [blastcache\\_load\(\)](#), [blastcache\\_save\(\)](#), [blastdb\\_gen\(\)](#), [blastn\\_run\(\)](#), [cache\\_rm\(\)](#), [cache\\_setup\(\)](#), [clade\\_select\(\)](#), [clstr2\\_calc\(\)](#), [clstr\\_all\(\)](#), [clstr\\_direct\(\)](#), [clstr\\_sqs\(\)](#), [clstr\\_subtree\(\)](#), [clstrarc\\_gen\(\)](#), [clstrarc\\_join\(\)](#), [clstrrec\\_gen\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_calc\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_join\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_merge\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_renumber\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_save\(\)](#), [cmdln\(\)](#), [descendants\\_get\(\)](#), [download\\_obj\\_check\(\)](#), [error\(\)](#), [gb\\_extract\(\)](#), [hierarchic\\_download\(\)](#), [info\(\)](#), [ncbocache\\_load\(\)](#), [ncbocache\\_save\(\)](#), [obj\\_check\(\)](#), [obj\\_load\(\)](#), [obj\\_save\(\)](#), [outfmt\\_get\(\)](#), [parameters\\_load\(\)](#), [parameters\\_setup\(\)](#), [parent\\_get\(\)](#), [progress\\_init\(\)](#), [progress\\_read\(\)](#), [progress\\_reset\(\)](#), [progress\\_save\(\)](#), [rank\\_get\(\)](#), [rawseqrec\\_breakdown\(\)](#), [safely\\_connect\(\)](#), [search\\_and\\_cache\(\)](#), [seeds\\_blast\(\)](#), [seq\\_download\(\)](#), [seqarc\\_gen\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_augment\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_convert\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_gen\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_get\(\)](#), [sids\\_check\(\)](#), [sids\\_get\(\)](#), [sids\\_load\(\)](#), [sids\\_save\(\)](#), [sqs\\_count\(\)](#), [sqs\\_save\(\)](#), [stage\\_args\\_check\(\)](#), [stages\\_run\(\)](#), [tax\\_download\(\)](#), [taxdict\\_gen\(\)](#), [taxtree\\_gen\(\)](#), [txids\\_get\(\)](#), [txnds\\_count\(\)](#), [warn\(\)](#)



---

 searchTxnmys

*Get node labels based on online taxonomic database*


---

### Description

Return names of each node in tree based on searching tip labels through Global Names Resolver <http://resolver.globalnames.org/> in NCBI.

### Usage

```
searchTxnmys(tree, cache = FALSE, parent = NULL, clean = TRUE, infer = TRUE)
```

### Arguments

tree	TreeMan object
cache	T/F, create a local cache of downloaded names?
parent	specify parent of all names to prevent false names
clean	T/F, ensure returned names contain no special characters?
infer	T/F, infer taxonyms for unfound nodes?

### Details

For each node, all the descendants are searched, the taxonomic lineages returned and then searched to find the lowest shared name. All the tip labels are searched against a specified taxonomic database through the GNR and NCBI. (So far only tested with NCBI database.) Use the infer argument to ensure a taxonym is returned for all nodes. If infer is true, all nodes without an identified taxonym adopt the taxonym of their parent. Will raise a warning if connection fails and will return NULL.

### See Also

[taxaResolve](#), [setTxnmys](#), [getNdsFrmTxnmys](#)

### Examples

```
tree <- randTree(8)
new_tids <- c(
  "Gallus_gallus", "Aileuropoda_melanoleucha", "Ailurus_fulgens",
  "Rattus_rattus", "Mus_musculus", "Gorilla_gorilla", "Pan_trogoldytes", "Homo_sapiens"
)
tree <- setNdsID(tree, tree["tips"], new_tids)
nd_labels <- searchTxnmys(tree)
print(nd_labels)
```

---

search_and_cache	<i>Run rentrez function and cache results</i>
------------------	---

---

### Description

Safely run a rentrez function. If the query fails, the function will retry. All query results are cached. To remove cached data use hard reset.

### Usage

```
search_and_cache(func, args, fnm, ps)
```

### Arguments

func	rentrez function
args	rentrez function arguments, list
fnm	rentrez function name
ps	Parameters list, generated with parameters()

### Value

rentrez function results

### See Also

Other run-private: [batcher\(\)](#), [blast\\_clstr\(\)](#), [blast\\_filter\(\)](#), [blast\\_setup\(\)](#), [blast\\_sqc\(\)](#), [blastcache\\_load\(\)](#), [blastcache\\_save\(\)](#), [blastdb\\_gen\(\)](#), [blastn\\_run\(\)](#), [cache\\_rm\(\)](#), [cache\\_setup\(\)](#), [clade\\_select\(\)](#), [clstr2\\_calc\(\)](#), [clstr\\_all\(\)](#), [clstr\\_direct\(\)](#), [clstr\\_sqc\(\)](#), [clstr\\_subtree\(\)](#), [clstrarc\\_gen\(\)](#), [clstrarc\\_join\(\)](#), [clstrrec\\_gen\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_calc\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_join\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_merge\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_renumber\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_save\(\)](#), [cmdln\(\)](#), [descendants\\_get\(\)](#), [download\\_obj\\_check\(\)](#), [error\(\)](#), [gb\\_extract\(\)](#), [hierarchic\\_download\(\)](#), [info\(\)](#), [ncbocache\\_load\(\)](#), [ncbocache\\_save\(\)](#), [obj\\_check\(\)](#), [obj\\_load\(\)](#), [obj\\_save\(\)](#), [outfmt\\_get\(\)](#), [parameters\\_load\(\)](#), [parameters\\_setup\(\)](#), [parent\\_get\(\)](#), [progress\\_init\(\)](#), [progress\\_read\(\)](#), [progress\\_reset\(\)](#), [progress\\_save\(\)](#), [rank\\_get\(\)](#), [rawseqrec\\_breakdown\(\)](#), [safely\\_connect\(\)](#), [searchterm\\_gen\(\)](#), [seeds\\_blast\(\)](#), [seq\\_download\(\)](#), [seqarc\\_gen\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_augment\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_convert\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_gen\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_get\(\)](#), [sids\\_check\(\)](#), [sids\\_get\(\)](#), [sids\\_load\(\)](#), [sids\\_save\(\)](#), [sqc\\_count\(\)](#), [sqc\\_save\(\)](#), [stage\\_args\\_check\(\)](#), [stages\\_run\(\)](#), [tax\\_download\(\)](#), [taxdict\\_gen\(\)](#), [taxtree\\_gen\(\)](#), [txids\\_get\(\)](#), [txnds\\_count\(\)](#), [warn\(\)](#)

---

seeds_blast	<i>BLAST seed sequences</i>
-------------	-----------------------------

---

**Description**

Runs all-v-all blast for seed sequences.

**Usage**

```
seeds_blast(sq, ps)
```

**Arguments**

sq	All seed sequences to be BLASTed
ps	Parameters list, generated with parameters()

**Value**

blast res data.frame

**See Also**

Other run-private: [batcher\(\)](#), [blast\\_clstr\(\)](#), [blast\\_filter\(\)](#), [blast\\_setup\(\)](#), [blast\\_sq\(\)](#), [blastcache\\_load\(\)](#), [blastcache\\_save\(\)](#), [blastdb\\_gen\(\)](#), [blastn\\_run\(\)](#), [cache\\_rm\(\)](#), [cache\\_setup\(\)](#), [clade\\_select\(\)](#), [clstr2\\_calc\(\)](#), [clstr\\_all\(\)](#), [clstr\\_direct\(\)](#), [clstr\\_sq\(\)](#), [clstr\\_subtree\(\)](#), [clstrarc\\_gen\(\)](#), [clstrarc\\_join\(\)](#), [clstrrec\\_gen\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_calc\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_join\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_merge\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_renumber\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_save\(\)](#), [cmdln\(\)](#), [descendants\\_get\(\)](#), [download\\_obj\\_check\(\)](#), [error\(\)](#), [gb\\_extract\(\)](#), [hierarchic\\_download\(\)](#), [info\(\)](#), [ncbocache\\_load\(\)](#), [ncbocache\\_save\(\)](#), [obj\\_check\(\)](#), [obj\\_load\(\)](#), [obj\\_save\(\)](#), [outfmt\\_get\(\)](#), [parameters\\_load\(\)](#), [parameters\\_setup\(\)](#), [parent\\_get\(\)](#), [progress\\_init\(\)](#), [progress\\_read\(\)](#), [progress\\_reset\(\)](#), [progress\\_save\(\)](#), [rank\\_get\(\)](#), [rawseqrec\\_breakdown\(\)](#), [safely\\_connect\(\)](#), [search\\_and\\_cache\(\)](#), [searchterm\\_gen\(\)](#), [seq\\_download\(\)](#), [seqarc\\_gen\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_augment\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_convert\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_gen\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_get\(\)](#), [sids\\_check\(\)](#), [sids\\_get\(\)](#), [sids\\_load\(\)](#), [sids\\_save\(\)](#), [sq\\_count\(\)](#), [sq\\_save\(\)](#), [stage\\_args\\_check\(\)](#), [stages\\_run\(\)](#), [tax\\_download\(\)](#), [taxdict\\_gen\(\)](#), [taxtree\\_gen\(\)](#), [txids\\_get\(\)](#), [txnds\\_count\(\)](#), [warn\(\)](#)

---

SeqArc-class	<i>Sequence record archive</i>
--------------	--------------------------------

---

**Description**

Multiple sequence records containing sequence data.

**Usage**

```

## S4 method for signature 'SeqArc'
as.character(x)

## S4 method for signature 'SeqArc'
show(object)

## S4 method for signature 'SeqArc'
print(x)

## S4 method for signature 'SeqArc'
str(object, max.level = 2L, ...)

## S4 method for signature 'SeqArc'
summary(object)

## S4 method for signature 'SeqArc,character'
x[[i]]

## S4 method for signature 'SeqArc,character,missing,missing'
x[i, j, ..., drop = TRUE]

```

**Arguments**

x	SeqArc object
object	SeqArc object
max.level	Maximum level of nesting for str()
...	Further arguments for str()
i	sid(s)
j	Unused
drop	Unused

**Details**

Sequences are stored as raw. Use rawToChar().

**Slots**

ids Vector of Sequence Record IDs  
 nnc1tds Vector of sequence lengths  
 nambgs Vector of number of ambiguous nucleotides  
 txids Vector source txid associated with each sequence  
 sqs List of SeqRecs named by ID

**See Also**

Other run-public: [ClstrArc-class](#), [ClstrRec-class](#), [Phylota-class](#), [SeqRec-class](#), [TaxDict-class](#), [TaxRec-class](#), [clusters2\\_run\(\)](#), [clusters\\_run\(\)](#), [parameters\\_reset\(\)](#), [reset\(\)](#), [restart\(\)](#), [run\(\)](#), [setup\(\)](#), [taxise\\_run\(\)](#)

**Examples**

```
data('aotus')
seqarc <- aotus@sq
# this is a SeqArc object
# it contains sequence records
show(seqarc)
# you can access its different data slots with @
seqarc@ids      # sequence IDs defined as accession + feature position
seqarc@nncltids # number of nucleotides of all sequences
seqarc@nambgs   # number of ambiguous nucleotides of all sequences
seqarc@txids    # all the taxonomic IDs for all sequences
seqarc@sq       # list of all SeqRecs
# access sequence records [[
(seqarc[[seqarc@ids[[1]]]]) # first sequence record
# generate new sequence archives with [
(seqarc[seqarc@ids[1:10]]) # first 10 sequences
```

---

seqarc\_gen

*Generate sequence archive*


---

**Description**

Creates an S4 SeqArc from list of SeqRecs

**Usage**

```
seqarc_gen(seqrecs)
```

**Arguments**

```
seqrecs      List of SeqRecs
```

**Value**

SeqArc

**See Also**

Other run-private: [batcher\(\)](#), [blast\\_clstr\(\)](#), [blast\\_filter\(\)](#), [blast\\_setup\(\)](#), [blast\\_sq\(\)](#), [blastcache\\_load\(\)](#), [blastcache\\_save\(\)](#), [blastdb\\_gen\(\)](#), [blastn\\_run\(\)](#), [cache\\_rm\(\)](#), [cache\\_setup\(\)](#), [clade\\_select\(\)](#), [clstr2\\_calc\(\)](#), [clstr\\_all\(\)](#), [clstr\\_direct\(\)](#), [clstr\\_sq\(\)](#), [clstr\\_subtree\(\)](#), [clstrarc\\_gen\(\)](#), [clstrarc\\_join\(\)](#), [clstrrec\\_gen\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_calc\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_join\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_merge\(\)](#),

```

clstrs_renumber(), clstrs_save(), cmdln(), descendants_get(), download_obj_check(),
error(), gb_extract(), hierarchic_download(), info(), ncbicache_load(), ncbicache_save(),
obj_check(), obj_load(), obj_save(), outfmt_get(), parameters_load(), parameters_setup(),
parent_get(), progress_init(), progress_read(), progress_reset(), progress_save(),
rank_get(), rawseqrec_breakdown(), safely_connect(), search_and_cache(), searchterm_gen(),
seeds_blast(), seq_download(), seqrec_augment(), seqrec_convert(), seqrec_gen(), seqrec_get(),
sids_check(), sids_get(), sids_load(), sids_save(), sqs_count(), sqs_save(), stage_args_check(),
stages_run(), tax_download(), taxdict_gen(), taxtree_gen(), txids_get(), txnds_count(),
warn()

```

---

SeqRec-class

*Sequence record*


---

### Description

Sequence record contains sequence data.

### Usage

```

## S4 method for signature 'SeqRec'
as.character(x)

## S4 method for signature 'SeqRec'
show(object)

## S4 method for signature 'SeqRec'
print(x)

## S4 method for signature 'SeqRec'
str(object, max.level = 2L, ...)

## S4 method for signature 'SeqRec'
summary(object)

```

### Arguments

x	SeqRec object
object	SeqRec object
max.level	Maximum level of nesting for str()
...	Further arguments for str()

### Details

Sequence is stored as raw. Use rawToChar().

**Slots**

id Unique ID  
 nm Best-guess sequence name  
 accssn Accession  
 vrsn Accession version  
 url URL  
 txid Taxonomic ID of source taxon  
 orgnsm Scientific name of source taxon  
 sq Sequence  
 dfln Definition line  
 ml\_typ Molecule type, e.g. DNA  
 rec\_typ Record type: Whole or feature  
 nncltds Number of nucleotides  
 nambgs Number of ambiguous nucleotides  
 pambgs Proportion of ambiguous nucleotides  
 gcr GC ratio  
 age Number of days between sequence upload and running pipeline

**See Also**

Other run-public: [ClstrArc-class](#), [ClstrRec-class](#), [Phylota-class](#), [SeqArc-class](#), [TaxDict-class](#), [TaxRec-class](#), [clusters2\\_run\(\)](#), [clusters\\_run\(\)](#), [parameters\\_reset\(\)](#), [reset\(\)](#), [restart\(\)](#), [run\(\)](#), [setup\(\)](#), [taxise\\_run\(\)](#)

**Examples**

```

data('aotus')
seqrec <- aotus@sqs@sqs[[1]]
# this is a SeqRec object
# it contains sequence records
show(seqrec)
# you can access its different data slots with @
seqrec@id      # sequence ID, accession + feature location
seqrec@nm      # feature name, '' if none
seqrec@accssn  # accession
seqrec@vrsn    # accession version
seqrec@url     # NCBI GenBank URL
seqrec@txid    # Taxonomic ID
seqrec@orgnsm  # free-text organism name
seqrec@sq      # sequence, in raw format
seqrec@dfln    # sequence definition
seqrec@ml_typ  # molecule type
seqrec@rec_typ # whole record or feature
seqrec@nncltds # sequence length
seqrec@nambgs  # number of non-ATCGs
  
```

```

seqrec@pambgs # proportion of non-ATCGs
seqrec@gcr    # GC-ratio
seqrec@age    # days since being added to GenBank
# get the sequence like so...
(rawToChar(seqrec@sq))

```

---

seqrec\_augment            *Augment sequence records list*

---

## Description

Add taxids to records and convert to archive.

## Usage

```
seqrec_augment(sqs, txdct)
```

## Arguments

sqs	List of SeqRecs
txdct	Taxonomic Dictionary

## Value

SeqArc

## See Also

Other run-private: [batcher\(\)](#), [blast\\_clstr\(\)](#), [blast\\_filter\(\)](#), [blast\\_setup\(\)](#), [blast\\_sqs\(\)](#), [blastcache\\_load\(\)](#), [blastcache\\_save\(\)](#), [blastdb\\_gen\(\)](#), [blastn\\_run\(\)](#), [cache\\_rm\(\)](#), [cache\\_setup\(\)](#), [clade\\_select\(\)](#), [clstr2\\_calc\(\)](#), [clstr\\_all\(\)](#), [clstr\\_direct\(\)](#), [clstr\\_sqs\(\)](#), [clstr\\_subtree\(\)](#), [clstrarc\\_gen\(\)](#), [clstrarc\\_join\(\)](#), [clstrrec\\_gen\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_calc\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_join\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_merge\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_renumber\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_save\(\)](#), [cmdln\(\)](#), [descendants\\_get\(\)](#), [download\\_obj\\_check\(\)](#), [error\(\)](#), [gb\\_extract\(\)](#), [hierarchic\\_download\(\)](#), [info\(\)](#), [ncbocache\\_load\(\)](#), [ncbocache\\_save\(\)](#), [obj\\_check\(\)](#), [obj\\_load\(\)](#), [obj\\_save\(\)](#), [outfmt\\_get\(\)](#), [parameters\\_load\(\)](#), [parameters\\_setup\(\)](#), [parent\\_get\(\)](#), [progress\\_init\(\)](#), [progress\\_read\(\)](#), [progress\\_reset\(\)](#), [progress\\_save\(\)](#), [rank\\_get\(\)](#), [rawseqrec\\_breakdown\(\)](#), [safely\\_connect\(\)](#), [search\\_and\\_cache\(\)](#), [searchterm\\_gen\(\)](#), [seeds\\_blast\(\)](#), [seq\\_download\(\)](#), [seqarc\\_gen\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_convert\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_gen\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_get\(\)](#), [sids\\_check\(\)](#), [sids\\_get\(\)](#), [sids\\_load\(\)](#), [sids\\_save\(\)](#), [sqs\\_count\(\)](#), [sqs\\_save\(\)](#), [stage\\_args\\_check\(\)](#), [stages\\_run\(\)](#), [tax\\_download\(\)](#), [taxdict\\_gen\(\)](#), [taxtree\\_gen\(\)](#), [txids\\_get\(\)](#), [txnds\\_count\(\)](#), [warn\(\)](#)



---

seqrec_convert	<i>Convert raw Entrez gb text record to SeqRecs</i>
----------------	---

---

**Description**

Parses returned sequences features with Entrez, returns one or more SeqRec objects for each raw record.

**Usage**

```
seqrec_convert(raw_recs, ps)
```

**Arguments**

raw_recs	Raw text records returned from Entrez fetch
ps	Parameters list, generated with parameters()

**Value**

SeqRecs

**See Also**

Other run-private: [batcher\(\)](#), [blast\\_clstr\(\)](#), [blast\\_filter\(\)](#), [blast\\_setup\(\)](#), [blast\\_sqns\(\)](#), [blastcache\\_load\(\)](#), [blastcache\\_save\(\)](#), [blastdb\\_gen\(\)](#), [blastn\\_run\(\)](#), [cache\\_rm\(\)](#), [cache\\_setup\(\)](#), [clade\\_select\(\)](#), [clstr2\\_calc\(\)](#), [clstr\\_all\(\)](#), [clstr\\_direct\(\)](#), [clstr\\_sqns\(\)](#), [clstr\\_subtree\(\)](#), [clstrarc\\_gen\(\)](#), [clstrarc\\_join\(\)](#), [clstrrec\\_gen\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_calc\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_join\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_merge\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_renumber\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_save\(\)](#), [cmdln\(\)](#), [descendants\\_get\(\)](#), [download\\_obj\\_check\(\)](#), [error\(\)](#), [gb\\_extract\(\)](#), [hierarchic\\_download\(\)](#), [info\(\)](#), [ncbocache\\_load\(\)](#), [ncbocache\\_save\(\)](#), [obj\\_check\(\)](#), [obj\\_load\(\)](#), [obj\\_save\(\)](#), [outfmt\\_get\(\)](#), [parameters\\_load\(\)](#), [parameters\\_setup\(\)](#), [parent\\_get\(\)](#), [progress\\_init\(\)](#), [progress\\_read\(\)](#), [progress\\_reset\(\)](#), [progress\\_save\(\)](#), [rank\\_get\(\)](#), [rawseqrec\\_breakdown\(\)](#), [safely\\_connect\(\)](#), [search\\_and\\_cache\(\)](#), [searchterm\\_gen\(\)](#), [seeds\\_blast\(\)](#), [seq\\_download\(\)](#), [seqarc\\_gen\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_augment\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_gen\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_get\(\)](#), [sids\\_check\(\)](#), [sids\\_get\(\)](#), [sids\\_load\(\)](#), [sids\\_save\(\)](#), [sqns\\_count\(\)](#), [sqns\\_save\(\)](#), [stage\\_args\\_check\(\)](#), [stages\\_run\(\)](#), [tax\\_download\(\)](#), [taxdict\\_gen\(\)](#), [taxtree\\_gen\(\)](#), [txids\\_get\(\)](#), [txnds\\_count\(\)](#), [warn\(\)](#)

---

seqrec_gen	<i>Generate sequence record</i>
------------	---------------------------------

---

**Description**

Creates an S4 SeqRec

**Usage**

```
seqrec_gen(
  accsn,
  nm,
  txid,
  sq,
  dfln,
  orgnsm,
  ml_typ,
  rec_typ,
  vrsn,
  age,
  lctn = NULL
)
```

**Arguments**

accsn	Accession ID
nm	Sequence name
txid	Taxonomic ID of source organism
sq	Sequence
dfln	Definition line
orgnsm	Source organism name
ml_typ	Molecule type
rec_typ	Sequence record type
vrsn	Accession version
age	Number of days since upload
lctn	Location numbers for features, e.g. '1..200'

**Value**

SeqRec

**See Also**

Other run-private: [batcher\(\)](#), [blast\\_clstr\(\)](#), [blast\\_filter\(\)](#), [blast\\_setup\(\)](#), [blast\\_sqs\(\)](#), [blastcache\\_load\(\)](#), [blastcache\\_save\(\)](#), [blastdb\\_gen\(\)](#), [blastn\\_run\(\)](#), [cache\\_rm\(\)](#), [cache\\_setup\(\)](#), [clade\\_select\(\)](#), [clstr2\\_calc\(\)](#), [clstr\\_all\(\)](#), [clstr\\_direct\(\)](#), [clstr\\_sqs\(\)](#), [clstr\\_subtree\(\)](#), [clstrarc\\_gen\(\)](#), [clstrarc\\_join\(\)](#), [clstrrec\\_gen\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_calc\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_join\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_merge\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_renumber\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_save\(\)](#), [cmdln\(\)](#), [descendants\\_get\(\)](#), [download\\_obj\\_check\(\)](#), [error\(\)](#), [gb\\_extract\(\)](#), [hierarchic\\_download\(\)](#), [info\(\)](#), [ncbocache\\_load\(\)](#), [ncbocache\\_save\(\)](#), [obj\\_check\(\)](#), [obj\\_load\(\)](#), [obj\\_save\(\)](#), [outfmt\\_get\(\)](#), [parameters\\_load\(\)](#), [parameters\\_setup\(\)](#), [parent\\_get\(\)](#), [progress\\_init\(\)](#), [progress\\_read\(\)](#), [progress\\_reset\(\)](#), [progress\\_save\(\)](#), [rank\\_get\(\)](#), [rawseqrec\\_breakdown\(\)](#), [safely\\_connect\(\)](#), [search\\_and\\_cache\(\)](#), [searchterm\\_gen\(\)](#), [seeds\\_blast\(\)](#), [seq\\_download\(\)](#), [seqarc\\_gen\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_augment\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_convert\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_get\(\)](#),

[sids\\_check\(\)](#), [sids\\_get\(\)](#), [sids\\_load\(\)](#), [sids\\_save\(\)](#), [sqs\\_count\(\)](#), [sqs\\_save\(\)](#), [stage\\_args\\_check\(\)](#), [stages\\_run\(\)](#), [tax\\_download\(\)](#), [taxdict\\_gen\(\)](#), [taxtree\\_gen\(\)](#), [txids\\_get\(\)](#), [txnds\\_count\(\)](#), [warn\(\)](#)

---

seqrec\_get

*seqrec\_get*

---

## Description

Downloads sequences from GenBank in batches.

## Usage

```
seqrec_get(txid, ps, direct = FALSE, lvl = 0)
```

## Arguments

txid	NCBI taxonomic ID
ps	Parameters list, generated with <code>parameters()</code>
direct	Node-level only or subtree as well? Default FALSE.
lvl	Integer, number of message indentations indicating code depth.

## Details

If a retez database is available and the number of sequences to retrieve is less than 'btchsz', the function will look the sequences up from the database rather than download.

## Value

Vector of sequence records

## See Also

Other run-private: [batcher\(\)](#), [blast\\_clstr\(\)](#), [blast\\_filter\(\)](#), [blast\\_setup\(\)](#), [blast\\_sqs\(\)](#), [blastcache\\_load\(\)](#), [blastcache\\_save\(\)](#), [blastdb\\_gen\(\)](#), [blastn\\_run\(\)](#), [cache\\_rm\(\)](#), [cache\\_setup\(\)](#), [clade\\_select\(\)](#), [clstr2\\_calc\(\)](#), [clstr\\_all\(\)](#), [clstr\\_direct\(\)](#), [clstr\\_sqs\(\)](#), [clstr\\_subtree\(\)](#), [clstrarc\\_gen\(\)](#), [clstrarc\\_join\(\)](#), [clstrrec\\_gen\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_calc\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_join\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_merge\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_renumber\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_save\(\)](#), [cmdln\(\)](#), [descendants\\_get\(\)](#), [download\\_obj\\_check\(\)](#), [error\(\)](#), [gb\\_extract\(\)](#), [hierarchic\\_download\(\)](#), [info\(\)](#), [ncbocache\\_load\(\)](#), [ncbocache\\_save\(\)](#), [obj\\_check\(\)](#), [obj\\_load\(\)](#), [obj\\_save\(\)](#), [outfmt\\_get\(\)](#), [parameters\\_load\(\)](#), [parameters\\_setup\(\)](#), [parent\\_get\(\)](#), [progress\\_init\(\)](#), [progress\\_read\(\)](#), [progress\\_reset\(\)](#), [progress\\_save\(\)](#), [rank\\_get\(\)](#), [rawseqrec\\_breakdown\(\)](#), [safely\\_connect\(\)](#), [search\\_and\\_cache\(\)](#), [searchterm\\_gen\(\)](#), [seeds\\_blast\(\)](#), [seq\\_download\(\)](#), [seqarc\\_gen\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_augment\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_convert\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_gen\(\)](#), [sids\\_check\(\)](#), [sids\\_get\(\)](#), [sids\\_load\(\)](#), [sids\\_save\(\)](#), [sqs\\_count\(\)](#), [sqs\\_save\(\)](#), [stage\\_args\\_check\(\)](#), [stages\\_run\(\)](#), [tax\\_download\(\)](#), [taxdict\\_gen\(\)](#), [taxtree\\_gen\(\)](#), [txids\\_get\(\)](#), [txnds\\_count\(\)](#), [warn\(\)](#)

---

seq_download	<i>Download sequences for txids</i>
--------------	-------------------------------------

---

### Description

Look up and download all sequences for given taxonomic IDs.

### Usage

```
seq_download(txids, txdct, ps)
```

### Arguments

txids	Taxonomic node IDs, numeric vector
txdct	Taxonomic dictionary
ps	Parameters list, generated with parameters()

### Details

Sequence downloads are cached.

### See Also

Other run-private: [batcher\(\)](#), [blast\\_clstr\(\)](#), [blast\\_filter\(\)](#), [blast\\_setup\(\)](#), [blast\\_sqc\(\)](#), [blastcache\\_load\(\)](#), [blastcache\\_save\(\)](#), [blastdb\\_gen\(\)](#), [blastn\\_run\(\)](#), [cache\\_rm\(\)](#), [cache\\_setup\(\)](#), [clade\\_select\(\)](#), [clstr2\\_calc\(\)](#), [clstr\\_all\(\)](#), [clstr\\_direct\(\)](#), [clstr\\_sqc\(\)](#), [clstr\\_subtree\(\)](#), [clstrarc\\_gen\(\)](#), [clstrarc\\_join\(\)](#), [clstrrec\\_gen\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_calc\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_join\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_merge\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_renumber\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_save\(\)](#), [cmdln\(\)](#), [descendants\\_get\(\)](#), [download\\_obj\\_check\(\)](#), [error\(\)](#), [gb\\_extract\(\)](#), [hierarchic\\_download\(\)](#), [info\(\)](#), [ncbocache\\_load\(\)](#), [ncbocache\\_save\(\)](#), [obj\\_check\(\)](#), [obj\\_load\(\)](#), [obj\\_save\(\)](#), [outfmt\\_get\(\)](#), [parameters\\_load\(\)](#), [parameters\\_setup\(\)](#), [parent\\_get\(\)](#), [progress\\_init\(\)](#), [progress\\_read\(\)](#), [progress\\_reset\(\)](#), [progress\\_save\(\)](#), [rank\\_get\(\)](#), [rawseqrec\\_breakdown\(\)](#), [safely\\_connect\(\)](#), [search\\_and\\_cache\(\)](#), [searchterm\\_gen\(\)](#), [seeds\\_blast\(\)](#), [seqarc\\_gen\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_augment\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_convert\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_gen\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_get\(\)](#), [sids\\_check\(\)](#), [sids\\_get\(\)](#), [sids\\_load\(\)](#), [sids\\_save\(\)](#), [sqc\\_count\(\)](#), [sqc\\_save\(\)](#), [stage\\_args\\_check\(\)](#), [stages\\_run\(\)](#), [tax\\_download\(\)](#), [taxdict\\_gen\(\)](#), [taxtree\\_gen\(\)](#), [txids\\_get\(\)](#), [txnds\\_count\(\)](#), [warn\(\)](#)

---

setAge	<i>Set the age of a tree</i>
--------	------------------------------

---

**Description**

Return a tree with the age altered.

**Usage**

```
setAge(tree, val)
```

**Arguments**

tree	TreeMan object
val	new age

**Details**

Use this function to change the age of a tree. For example, you might want to convert the tree so that its age equals 1. This function will achieve that by modifying every branch, while maintaining their relative lengths.

**See Also**

[setPD `https://github.com/DomBennett/treeman/wiki/set-methods`](https://github.com/DomBennett/treeman/wiki/set-methods)

**Examples**

```
tree <- randTree(10)
tree <- setAge(tree, val = 1)
summary(tree)
```

---

setNdID	<i>Set the ID of a node</i>
---------	-----------------------------

---

**Description**

Return a tree with the ID of a node altered.

**Usage**

```
setNdID(tree, id, val)
```

**Arguments**

tree	TreeMan object
id	id to be changed
val	new id

**Details**

IDs cannot be changed directly for the TreeMan class. To change an ID use this function. Warning: all IDs must be unique, avoid spaces in IDs and only use letters, numbers and underscores. Use [updateSlts](#) after running.

**See Also**

[setNdsID](https://github.com/DomBennett/treeman/wiki/set-methods) <https://github.com/DomBennett/treeman/wiki/set-methods>

**Examples**

```
tree <- randTree(10)
tree <- setNdID(tree, "t1", "heffalump")
tree <- updateSlts(tree)
```

---

setNdOther	<i>Set a user defined slot</i>
------------	--------------------------------

---

**Description**

Return a tree with a user defined slot for node ID.

**Usage**

```
setNdOther(tree, id, val, slt_nm)
```

**Arguments**

tree	TreeMan object
id	id of the node
val	data for slot
slt_nm	slot name

**Details**

A user can specify new slots in a tree. Add a new slot with this function by providing a node ID, a value for the new slot and a unique new slot name. Slot names must not be default TreeMan names. The new value can be any data type.

**See Also**

[setNdsOther](https://github.com/DomBennett/treeman/wiki/set-methods) <https://github.com/DomBennett/treeman/wiki/set-methods>

**Examples**

```
tree <- randTree(10)
tree <- setNdOther(tree, "t1", 1, "binary_val")
tree <- updateSlts(tree)
(getNdSlt(tree, id = "t1", slt_nm = "binary_val"))
```

---

 setNdsID

*Set the IDs of multiple nodes*


---

**Description**

Return a tree with the IDs of nodes altered.

**Usage**

```
setNdsID(tree, ids, vals, parallel = FALSE, progress = "none")
```

**Arguments**

tree	TreeMan object
ids	ids to be changed
vals	new ids
parallel	logical, make parallel?
progress	name of the progress bar to use, see <a href="#">create_progress_bar</a>

**Details**

Runs `setNdID()` over multiple nodes. Warning: all IDs must be unique, avoid spaces in IDs, only use numbers, letters and underscores. Parellizable.

**See Also**

[setNdID](https://github.com/DomBennett/treeman/wiki/set-methods) <https://github.com/DomBennett/treeman/wiki/set-methods>

**Examples**

```
tree <- randTree(10)
new_ids <- paste0("heffalump_", 1:tree["ntips"])
tree <- setNdsID(tree, tree["tips"], new_ids)
summary(tree)
```

---

setNdsOther	<i>Set a user defined slot for multiple nodes</i>
-------------	---

---

### Description

Return a tree with a user defined slot for node IDs.

### Usage

```
setNdsOther(tree, ids, vals, slt_nm, parallel = FALSE, progress = "none")
```

### Arguments

tree	TreeMan object
ids	id sof the nodes
vals	data for slot
slt_nm	slot name
parallel	logical, make parallel?
progress	name of the progress bar to use, see <a href="#">create_progress_bar</a>

### Details

Runs setNdOther() over multiple nodes. Parellizable.

### See Also

[setNdOther](https://github.com/DomBennett/treeman/wiki/set-methods) <https://github.com/DomBennett/treeman/wiki/set-methods>

### Examples

```
tree <- randTree(10)
# e.g. confidences for nodes
vals <- runif(min = 0, max = 1, n = tree["nall"])
tree <- setNdsOther(tree, tree["all"], vals, "confidence")
tree <- updateSlts(tree)
summary(tree)
(getNdsSlt(tree, ids = tree["all"], slt_nm = "confidence"))
```



---

setNdSpn	<i>Set the branch length of a specific node</i>
----------	---

---

**Description**

Return a tree with the span of a node altered.

**Usage**

```
setNdSpn(tree, id, val)
```

**Arguments**

tree	TreeMan object
id	id of node whose preceding edge is to be changed
val	new span

**Details**

Takes a tree, a node ID and a new value for the node's preceding branch length (span).

**See Also**

[setNdsSpn](https://github.com/DomBennett/treeman/wiki/set-methods) <https://github.com/DomBennett/treeman/wiki/set-methods>

**Examples**

```
tree <- randTree(10)
tree <- setNdSpn(tree, id = "t1", val = 100)
tree <- updateSlts(tree)
summary(tree)
```

---

setNdsSpn	<i>Set the branch lengths of specific nodes</i>
-----------	---

---

**Description**

Return a tree with the spans of nodes altered.

**Usage**

```
setNdsSpn(tree, ids, vals, parallel = FALSE, progress = "none")
```

**Arguments**

tree	TreeMan object
ids	ids of nodes whose preceding edges are to be changed
vals	new spans
parallel	logical, make parallel?
progress	name of the progress bar to use, see <a href="#">create_progress_bar</a>

**Details**

Runs setNdsSpn over multiple nodes. Parallelizable.

**See Also**

[setNdsSpn](https://github.com/DomBennett/treeman/wiki/set-methods) <https://github.com/DomBennett/treeman/wiki/set-methods>

**Examples**

```
tree <- randTree(10)
# make tree taxonomic
tree <- setNdsSpn(tree, ids = tree["all"], vals = 1)
summary(tree)
# remove spns by setting all to 0
tree <- setNdsSpn(tree, ids = tree["all"], vals = 0)
summary(tree)
```

---

 setPD

*Set the phylogenetic diversity*


---

**Description**

Return a tree with the phylogenetic diversity altered.

**Usage**

```
setPD(tree, val)
```

**Arguments**

tree	TreeMan object
val	new phylogenetic diversity

**Details**

Use this function to convert the phylogenetic diversity of a tree. For example, you might want to convert the tree so the sum of all branches is 1. This function will achieve that by modifying every branch, while maintaining their relative lengths.

**See Also**

[setAge](https://github.com/DomBennett/treeman/wiki/set-methods) <https://github.com/DomBennett/treeman/wiki/set-methods>

**Examples**

```
tree <- randTree(10)
tree <- setPD(tree, val = 1)
summary(tree)
```

---

setTxnyms

*Set the txnym slots in a tree*

---

**Description**

Return a tree with txnyms added to specified nodes

**Usage**

```
setTxnyms(tree, txnyms)
```

**Arguments**

tree	TreeMan object
txnyms	named vector or list

**Details**

Returns a tree. Specify the taxonomic groups for nodes in a tree by providing a vector or list named by node IDs. Takes output from `searchTxnyms`. Only letters, numbers and underscores allowed. To remove special characters use regular expressions, e.g. `gsub(['a-zA-Z0-9_'], '', txnym)`

**See Also**

[taxaResolve](#), [searchTxnyms](#), [getNdsLng](#), [getNdLng](#), <https://github.com/DomBennett/treeman/wiki/set-methods>

**Examples**

```
data(mammals)
# let's change the txnym for humans
# what's its summary before we change anything?
summary(mammals[["Homo_sapiens"]])
# now let's add Hominini
new_tnxym <- list("Homo_sapiens" = c("Hominini", "Homo"))
mammals <- setTxnyms(mammals, new_tnxym)
summary(mammals[["Homo_sapiens"]])
```

---

setup	<i>Set-up parameters</i>
-------	--------------------------

---

### Description

Set up working directory with parameters.

### Usage

```
setup(  
  wd,  
  txid,  
  ncbi_dr = ".",  
  v = FALSE,  
  overwrite = FALSE,  
  outsider = FALSE,  
  ...  
)
```

### Arguments

wd	Working directory
txid	Root taxonomic ID(s), vector or numeric
ncbi_dr	Directory to NCBI BLAST tools, default '.'
v	Verbose, T/F
overwrite	Overwrite existing cache?
outsider	Run through outsider? T/F
...	Additional parameters

### Details

See [parameters\(\)](#) for a description of all parameters and their defaults. You can change parameters after a folder has been set up with [parameters\\_reset\(\)](#).

### See Also

Other run-public: [ClstrArc-class](#), [ClstrRec-class](#), [Phylota-class](#), [SeqArc-class](#), [SeqRec-class](#), [TaxDict-class](#), [TaxRec-class](#), [clusters2\\_run\(\)](#), [clusters\\_run\(\)](#), [parameters\\_reset\(\)](#), [reset\(\)](#), [restart\(\)](#), [run\(\)](#), [taxise\\_run\(\)](#)

**Examples**

```
## Not run:

# Note: this example requires BLAST to run.

# example with temp folder
wd <- file.path(tempdir(), 'aotus')
# setup for aotus, make sure aotus/ folder already exists
if (!dir.exists(wd)) {
  dir.create(wd)
}
ncbi_dr <- '[SET BLAST+ BIN PATH HERE]'
# e.g. "/usr/local/ncbi/blast/bin/"
setup(wd = wd, txid = 9504, ncbi_dr = ncbi_dr) # txid for Aotus primate genus
# see ?parameters for all available parameter options

## End(Not run)
```

sids\_check

*Check if sids exist***Description**

Check if sids are already downloaded for a txid.

**Usage**

```
sids_check(wd, txid)
```

**Arguments**

wd	Working directory
txid	Taxonomic ID, numeric

**Details**

```
#' @name sqs_load #' @title Load sequences from cache #' @description Load sequences down-
loaded by dwnld function. #' @param wd Working directory #' @param txid Taxonomic ID, nu-
meric #' @family run-private #' @return SeqArc sqs_load <- function(wd, txid) d <- file.path(wd,
'cache') if (!file.exists(d)) stop('Cache does not exist.')
```

```
d <- file.path(d, 'sqs') if (!file.exists(d)) stop('sqs' not in cache. Have you run the download
stage?')
```

```
fl <- file.path(d, paste0(txid, '.RData')) if (!file.exists(fl)) stop(paste0('[', txid, '] not in 'sqs' of
cache.'))
```

```
sqs <- try(readRDS(file = fl), silent = TRUE) if (inherits(sqs, 'try-error')) file.remove(fl)
```

```
sqs
```

**Value**

T/F

**See Also**

Other run-private: `batcher()`, `blast_clstr()`, `blast_filter()`, `blast_setup()`, `blast_sqc()`, `blastcache_load()`, `blastcache_save()`, `blastdb_gen()`, `blastn_run()`, `cache_rm()`, `cache_setup()`, `clade_select()`, `clstr2_calc()`, `clstr_all()`, `clstr_direct()`, `clstr_sqc()`, `clstr_subtree()`, `clstrarc_gen()`, `clstrarc_join()`, `clstrrec_gen()`, `clstrs_calc()`, `clstrs_join()`, `clstrs_merge()`, `clstrs_renumber()`, `clstrs_save()`, `cmdln()`, `descendants_get()`, `download_obj_check()`, `error()`, `gb_extract()`, `hierarchic_download()`, `info()`, `ncbocache_load()`, `ncbocache_save()`, `obj_check()`, `obj_load()`, `obj_save()`, `outfmt_get()`, `parameters_load()`, `parameters_setup()`, `parent_get()`, `progress_init()`, `progress_read()`, `progress_reset()`, `progress_save()`, `rank_get()`, `rawseqrec_breakdown()`, `safely_connect()`, `search_and_cache()`, `searchterm_gen()`, `seeds_blast()`, `seq_download()`, `seqarc_gen()`, `seqrec_augment()`, `seqrec_convert()`, `seqrec_gen()`, `seqrec_get()`, `sids_get()`, `sids_load()`, `sids_save()`, `sqc_count()`, `sqc_save()`, `stage_args_check()`, `stages_run()`, `tax_download()`, `taxdict_gen()`, `taxtree_gen()`, `txids_get()`, `txnds_count()`, `warn()`

sids\_get

*Return random set of sequence IDs***Description**

For a given txid return a random set of sequences associated.

**Usage**

```
sids_get(txid, direct, ps, retmax = 100, hrdmx = 1e+05)
```

**Arguments**

txid	NCBI taxon identifier
direct	Node-level only or subtree as well? Default FALSE.
ps	Parameters list, generated with <code>parameters()</code>
retmax	Maximum number of sequences when querying model organisms. The smaller the more random, the larger the faster.
hrdmx	Absolute maximum number of sequence IDs to download in a single query.

**Details**

For model organisms downloading all IDs can take long time or even cause an xml parsing error. For any search with more than hrdmx sequences, this function will run multiple small searches downloading retmax seq IDs at a time with different restart values to generate a semi-random vector of sequence IDs. For all other searches, all IDs will be retrieved. Note, it makes no sense for mdlthrs in parameters to be greater than hrdmx in this function.

**Value**

vector of IDs

**See Also**

Other run-private: [batcher\(\)](#), [blast\\_clstr\(\)](#), [blast\\_filter\(\)](#), [blast\\_setup\(\)](#), [blast\\_sqts\(\)](#), [blastcache\\_load\(\)](#), [blastcache\\_save\(\)](#), [blastdb\\_gen\(\)](#), [blastn\\_run\(\)](#), [cache\\_rm\(\)](#), [cache\\_setup\(\)](#), [clade\\_select\(\)](#), [clstr2\\_calc\(\)](#), [clstr\\_all\(\)](#), [clstr\\_direct\(\)](#), [clstr\\_sqts\(\)](#), [clstr\\_subtree\(\)](#), [clstrarc\\_gen\(\)](#), [clstrarc\\_join\(\)](#), [clstrrec\\_gen\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_calc\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_join\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_merge\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_renumber\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_save\(\)](#), [cmdln\(\)](#), [descendants\\_get\(\)](#), [download\\_obj\\_check\(\)](#), [error\(\)](#), [gb\\_extract\(\)](#), [hierarchic\\_download\(\)](#), [info\(\)](#), [ncbocache\\_load\(\)](#), [ncbocache\\_save\(\)](#), [obj\\_check\(\)](#), [obj\\_load\(\)](#), [obj\\_save\(\)](#), [outfmt\\_get\(\)](#), [parameters\\_load\(\)](#), [parameters\\_setup\(\)](#), [parent\\_get\(\)](#), [progress\\_init\(\)](#), [progress\\_read\(\)](#), [progress\\_reset\(\)](#), [progress\\_save\(\)](#), [rank\\_get\(\)](#), [rawseqrec\\_breakdown\(\)](#), [safely\\_connect\(\)](#), [search\\_and\\_cache\(\)](#), [searchterm\\_gen\(\)](#), [seeds\\_blast\(\)](#), [seq\\_download\(\)](#), [seqarc\\_gen\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_augment\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_convert\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_gen\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_get\(\)](#), [sids\\_check\(\)](#), [sids\\_load\(\)](#), [sids\\_save\(\)](#), [sqts\\_count\(\)](#), [sqts\\_save\(\)](#), [stage\\_args\\_check\(\)](#), [stages\\_run\(\)](#), [tax\\_download\(\)](#), [taxdict\\_gen\(\)](#), [taxtree\\_gen\(\)](#), [txids\\_get\(\)](#), [txnds\\_count\(\)](#), [warn\(\)](#)

---

sids\_load

*Load sids from cache*

---

**Description**

Load sids downloaded by [sids\\_get](#) function.

**Usage**

```
sids_load(wd, txid)
```

**Arguments**

wd	Working directory
txid	Taxonomic ID, numeric

**Value**

vector of sids

**See Also**

Other run-private: [batcher\(\)](#), [blast\\_clstr\(\)](#), [blast\\_filter\(\)](#), [blast\\_setup\(\)](#), [blast\\_sqts\(\)](#), [blastcache\\_load\(\)](#), [blastcache\\_save\(\)](#), [blastdb\\_gen\(\)](#), [blastn\\_run\(\)](#), [cache\\_rm\(\)](#), [cache\\_setup\(\)](#), [clade\\_select\(\)](#), [clstr2\\_calc\(\)](#), [clstr\\_all\(\)](#), [clstr\\_direct\(\)](#), [clstr\\_sqts\(\)](#), [clstr\\_subtree\(\)](#), [clstrarc\\_gen\(\)](#), [clstrarc\\_join\(\)](#), [clstrrec\\_gen\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_calc\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_join\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_merge\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_renumber\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_save\(\)](#), [cmdln\(\)](#), [descendants\\_get\(\)](#), [download\\_obj\\_check\(\)](#), [error\(\)](#), [gb\\_extract\(\)](#), [hierarchic\\_download\(\)](#), [info\(\)](#), [ncbocache\\_load\(\)](#), [ncbocache\\_save\(\)](#),

obj\_check(), obj\_load(), obj\_save(), outfmt\_get(), parameters\_load(), parameters\_setup(), parent\_get(), progress\_init(), progress\_read(), progress\_reset(), progress\_save(), rank\_get(), rawseqrec\_breakdown(), safely\_connect(), search\_and\_cache(), searchterm\_gen(), seeds\_blast(), seq\_download(), seqarc\_gen(), seqrec\_augment(), seqrec\_convert(), seqrec\_gen(), seqrec\_get(), sids\_check(), sids\_get(), sids\_save(), sqs\_count(), sqs\_save(), stage\_args\_check(), stages\_run(), tax\_download(), taxdict\_gen(), taxtree\_gen(), txids\_get(), txnds\_count(), warn()

---

sids\_save

*Save sids to cache*

---

### Description

Saves sids downloaded

### Usage

sids\_save(wd, txid, sids)

### Arguments

wd	Working directory
txid	Taxonomic ID, numeric
sids	sids

### See Also

Other run-private: [batcher\(\)](#), [blast\\_clstr\(\)](#), [blast\\_filter\(\)](#), [blast\\_setup\(\)](#), [blast\\_sqs\(\)](#), [blastcache\\_load\(\)](#), [blastcache\\_save\(\)](#), [blastdb\\_gen\(\)](#), [blastn\\_run\(\)](#), [cache\\_rm\(\)](#), [cache\\_setup\(\)](#), [clade\\_select\(\)](#), [clstr2\\_calc\(\)](#), [clstr\\_all\(\)](#), [clstr\\_direct\(\)](#), [clstr\\_sqs\(\)](#), [clstr\\_subtree\(\)](#), [clstrarc\\_gen\(\)](#), [clstrarc\\_join\(\)](#), [clstrrec\\_gen\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_calc\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_join\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_merge\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_renumber\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_save\(\)](#), [cmdln\(\)](#), [descendants\\_get\(\)](#), [download\\_obj\\_check\(\)](#), [error\(\)](#), [gb\\_extract\(\)](#), [hierarchic\\_download\(\)](#), [info\(\)](#), [ncbocache\\_load\(\)](#), [ncbocache\\_save\(\)](#), [obj\\_check\(\)](#), [obj\\_load\(\)](#), [obj\\_save\(\)](#), [outfmt\\_get\(\)](#), [parameters\\_load\(\)](#), [parameters\\_setup\(\)](#), [parent\\_get\(\)](#), [progress\\_init\(\)](#), [progress\\_read\(\)](#), [progress\\_reset\(\)](#), [progress\\_save\(\)](#), [rank\\_get\(\)](#), [rawseqrec\\_breakdown\(\)](#), [safely\\_connect\(\)](#), [search\\_and\\_cache\(\)](#), [searchterm\\_gen\(\)](#), [seeds\\_blast\(\)](#), [seq\\_download\(\)](#), [seqarc\\_gen\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_augment\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_convert\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_gen\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_get\(\)](#), [sids\\_check\(\)](#), [sids\\_get\(\)](#), [sids\\_load\(\)](#), [sqs\\_count\(\)](#), [sqs\\_save\(\)](#), [stage\\_args\\_check\(\)](#), [stages\\_run\(\)](#), [tax\\_download\(\)](#), [taxdict\\_gen\(\)](#), [taxtree\\_gen\(\)](#), [txids\\_get\(\)](#), [txnds\\_count\(\)](#), [warn\(\)](#)



---

sqs_count	<i>Count number of sequences for txid</i>
-----------	---

---

### Description

Return the number of sequences associated with a taxonomic ID on NCBI GenBank.

### Usage

```
sqs_count(txid, ps, direct = FALSE)
```

### Arguments

txid	Taxonomic ID
ps	Parameters list, generated with parameters()
direct	Node-level only or subtree as well? Default FALSE.

### Value

integer

### See Also

Other run-private: [batcher\(\)](#), [blast\\_clstr\(\)](#), [blast\\_filter\(\)](#), [blast\\_setup\(\)](#), [blast\\_sqs\(\)](#), [blastcache\\_load\(\)](#), [blastcache\\_save\(\)](#), [blastdb\\_gen\(\)](#), [blastn\\_run\(\)](#), [cache\\_rm\(\)](#), [cache\\_setup\(\)](#), [clade\\_select\(\)](#), [clstr2\\_calc\(\)](#), [clstr\\_all\(\)](#), [clstr\\_direct\(\)](#), [clstr\\_sqs\(\)](#), [clstr\\_subtree\(\)](#), [clstrarc\\_gen\(\)](#), [clstrarc\\_join\(\)](#), [clstrrec\\_gen\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_calc\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_join\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_merge\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_renumber\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_save\(\)](#), [cmdln\(\)](#), [descendants\\_get\(\)](#), [download\\_obj\\_check\(\)](#), [error\(\)](#), [gb\\_extract\(\)](#), [hierarchic\\_download\(\)](#), [info\(\)](#), [ncbocache\\_load\(\)](#), [ncbocache\\_save\(\)](#), [obj\\_check\(\)](#), [obj\\_load\(\)](#), [obj\\_save\(\)](#), [outfmt\\_get\(\)](#), [parameters\\_load\(\)](#), [parameters\\_setup\(\)](#), [parent\\_get\(\)](#), [progress\\_init\(\)](#), [progress\\_read\(\)](#), [progress\\_reset\(\)](#), [progress\\_save\(\)](#), [rank\\_get\(\)](#), [rawseqrec\\_breakdown\(\)](#), [safely\\_connect\(\)](#), [search\\_and\\_cache\(\)](#), [searchterm\\_gen\(\)](#), [seeds\\_blast\(\)](#), [seq\\_download\(\)](#), [seqarc\\_gen\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_augment\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_convert\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_gen\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_get\(\)](#), [sids\\_check\(\)](#), [sids\\_get\(\)](#), [sids\\_load\(\)](#), [sids\\_save\(\)](#), [sqs\\_save\(\)](#), [stage\\_args\\_check\(\)](#), [stages\\_run\(\)](#), [tax\\_download\(\)](#), [taxdict\\_gen\(\)](#), [taxtree\\_gen\(\)](#), [txids\\_get\(\)](#), [txnds\\_count\(\)](#), [warn\(\)](#)

---

sqs_save	<i>Save sequences to cache</i>
----------	--------------------------------

---

### Description

Saves sequences downloaded

### Usage

```
sqs_save(wd, txid, sqs)
```

### Arguments

wd	Working directory
txid	Taxonomic ID, numeric
sqs	Sequences

### Details

Used within the `dwnld` function. Saves sequence data by txid in cache.

### See Also

Other run-private: [batcher\(\)](#), [blast\\_clstr\(\)](#), [blast\\_filter\(\)](#), [blast\\_setup\(\)](#), [blast\\_sqs\(\)](#), [blastcache\\_load\(\)](#), [blastcache\\_save\(\)](#), [blastdb\\_gen\(\)](#), [blastn\\_run\(\)](#), [cache\\_rm\(\)](#), [cache\\_setup\(\)](#), [clade\\_select\(\)](#), [clstr2\\_calc\(\)](#), [clstr\\_all\(\)](#), [clstr\\_direct\(\)](#), [clstr\\_sqs\(\)](#), [clstr\\_subtree\(\)](#), [clstrarc\\_gen\(\)](#), [clstrarc\\_join\(\)](#), [clstrrec\\_gen\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_calc\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_join\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_merge\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_renumber\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_save\(\)](#), [cmdln\(\)](#), [descendants\\_get\(\)](#), [download\\_obj\\_check\(\)](#), [error\(\)](#), [gb\\_extract\(\)](#), [hierarchic\\_download\(\)](#), [info\(\)](#), [ncbocache\\_load\(\)](#), [ncbocache\\_save\(\)](#), [obj\\_check\(\)](#), [obj\\_load\(\)](#), [obj\\_save\(\)](#), [outfmt\\_get\(\)](#), [parameters\\_load\(\)](#), [parameters\\_setup\(\)](#), [parent\\_get\(\)](#), [progress\\_init\(\)](#), [progress\\_read\(\)](#), [progress\\_reset\(\)](#), [progress\\_save\(\)](#), [rank\\_get\(\)](#), [rawseqrec\\_breakdown\(\)](#), [safely\\_connect\(\)](#), [search\\_and\\_cache\(\)](#), [searchterm\\_gen\(\)](#), [seeds\\_blast\(\)](#), [seq\\_download\(\)](#), [seqarc\\_gen\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_augment\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_convert\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_gen\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_get\(\)](#), [sids\\_check\(\)](#), [sids\\_get\(\)](#), [sids\\_load\(\)](#), [sids\\_save\(\)](#), [sqs\\_count\(\)](#), [stage\\_args\\_check\(\)](#), [stages\\_run\(\)](#), [tax\\_download\(\)](#), [taxdict\\_gen\(\)](#), [taxtree\\_gen\(\)](#), [txids\\_get\(\)](#), [txnds\\_count\(\)](#), [warn\(\)](#)

---

stages_run	<i>Sequentially run each stage</i>
------------	------------------------------------

---

**Description**

Runs stages from frm to to. Records stage progress in cache.

**Usage**

```
stages_run(wd, to, frm, stgs_msg, rstrt = FALSE)
```

**Arguments**

wd	Working directory
to	Total number of stages to run
frm	Starting stage to run from
stgs_msg	Printout stage message for log
rstrt	Restarting, T/F

**See Also**

Other run-private: [batcher\(\)](#), [blast\\_clstr\(\)](#), [blast\\_filter\(\)](#), [blast\\_setup\(\)](#), [blast\\_sqs\(\)](#), [blastcache\\_load\(\)](#), [blastcache\\_save\(\)](#), [blastdb\\_gen\(\)](#), [blastn\\_run\(\)](#), [cache\\_rm\(\)](#), [cache\\_setup\(\)](#), [clade\\_select\(\)](#), [clstr2\\_calc\(\)](#), [clstr\\_all\(\)](#), [clstr\\_direct\(\)](#), [clstr\\_sqs\(\)](#), [clstr\\_subtree\(\)](#), [clstrarc\\_gen\(\)](#), [clstrarc\\_join\(\)](#), [clstrrec\\_gen\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_calc\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_join\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_merge\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_renumber\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_save\(\)](#), [cmdln\(\)](#), [descendants\\_get\(\)](#), [download\\_obj\\_check\(\)](#), [error\(\)](#), [gb\\_extract\(\)](#), [hierarchic\\_download\(\)](#), [info\(\)](#), [ncbocache\\_load\(\)](#), [ncbocache\\_save\(\)](#), [obj\\_check\(\)](#), [obj\\_load\(\)](#), [obj\\_save\(\)](#), [outfmt\\_get\(\)](#), [parameters\\_load\(\)](#), [parameters\\_setup\(\)](#), [parent\\_get\(\)](#), [progress\\_init\(\)](#), [progress\\_read\(\)](#), [progress\\_reset\(\)](#), [progress\\_save\(\)](#), [rank\\_get\(\)](#), [rawseqrec\\_breakdown\(\)](#), [safely\\_connect\(\)](#), [search\\_and\\_cache\(\)](#), [searchterm\\_gen\(\)](#), [seeds\\_blast\(\)](#), [seq\\_download\(\)](#), [seqarc\\_gen\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_augment\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_convert\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_gen\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_get\(\)](#), [sids\\_check\(\)](#), [sids\\_get\(\)](#), [sids\\_load\(\)](#), [sids\\_save\(\)](#), [sqs\\_count\(\)](#), [sqs\\_save\(\)](#), [stage\\_args\\_check\(\)](#), [tax\\_download\(\)](#), [taxdict\\_gen\(\)](#), [taxtree\\_gen\(\)](#), [txids\\_get\(\)](#), [txnds\\_count\(\)](#), [warn\(\)](#)

---

stage_args_check	<i>Check stage arguments</i>
------------------	------------------------------

---

**Description**

Ensures stage arguments are valid, raises an error if not.

**Usage**

```
stage_args_check(to, frm)
```

**Arguments**

to	ending stage
frm	starting stage

**Value**

character, stage message

**See Also**

Other run-private: `batcher()`, `blast_clstr()`, `blast_filter()`, `blast_setup()`, `blast_sqs()`, `blastcache_load()`, `blastcache_save()`, `blastdb_gen()`, `blastn_run()`, `cache_rm()`, `cache_setup()`, `clade_select()`, `clstr2_calc()`, `clstr_all()`, `clstr_direct()`, `clstr_sqs()`, `clstr_subtree()`, `clstrarc_gen()`, `clstrarc_join()`, `clstrrec_gen()`, `clstrs_calc()`, `clstrs_join()`, `clstrs_merge()`, `clstrs_renumber()`, `clstrs_save()`, `cmdln()`, `descendants_get()`, `download_obj_check()`, `error()`, `gb_extract()`, `hierarchic_download()`, `info()`, `ncbocache_load()`, `ncbocache_save()`, `obj_check()`, `obj_load()`, `obj_save()`, `outfmt_get()`, `parameters_load()`, `parameters_setup()`, `parent_get()`, `progress_init()`, `progress_read()`, `progress_reset()`, `progress_save()`, `rank_get()`, `rawseqrec_breakdown()`, `safely_connect()`, `search_and_cache()`, `searchterm_gen()`, `seeds_blast()`, `seq_download()`, `seqarc_gen()`, `seqrec_augment()`, `seqrec_convert()`, `seqrec_gen()`, `seqrec_get()`, `sids_check()`, `sids_get()`, `sids_load()`, `sids_save()`, `sqs_count()`, `sqs_save()`, `stages_run()`, `tax_download()`, `taxdict_gen()`, `taxtree_gen()`, `txids_get()`, `txnds_count()`, `warn()`

---

sturgeons

*sturgeons*

---

**Description**

sturgeons

**Format**

A TreeMan or Phylota object

**Examples**

```
data("sturgeons")
```

---

summary_phylota	<i>Summarise clusters in Phylota Table</i>
-----------------	--

---

**Description**

Generates a summary data.frame from all clusters in Phylota object.

**Usage**

```
summary_phylota(phylota)
```

**Arguments**

phylota          Phylota object

**See Also**

Other tools-private: [mk\\_txid\\_in\\_sq\\_mtrx\(\)](#), [update\\_phylota\(\)](#)

---

tardigrades	<i>tardigrades</i>
-------------	--------------------

---

**Description**

tardigrades

**Format**

A TreeMan or Phylota object

**Examples**

```
data("tardigrades")
```

---

taxaResolve	<i>Resolve taxonomic names online</i>
-------------	---------------------------------------

---

### Description

Resolve taxonomic names via the Global Names Resolver.

### Usage

```
taxaResolve(
  nms,
  batch = 100,
  datasource = 4,
  genus = TRUE,
  cache = FALSE,
  parent = NULL
)
```

### Arguments

nms	vector of names
batch	size of the batches to be queried
datasource	ID number of the datasource
genus	boolean, if true will search against GNR with just the genus name for names that failed to resolve using the full species name
cache	T/F, create a local cache of downloaded names?
parent	specify parent of all names to prevent false names

### Details

Returns dataframe containing GNR metadata for each name wames that cannot be resolved are returned as NA. Various datasources are available, see [http://resolver.globalnames.org/data\\_sources](http://resolver.globalnames.org/data_sources) for a list and IDs. Default is 4 for NCBI. Will raise a warning if connection fails and will return NULL.

### See Also

[searchTxnyms](#), [setTxnyms](#), [getNdsFrmTxnyms](#)

### Examples

```
my_lovely_names <- c(
  "Gallus gallus", "Pongo pingu", "Homo sapiens",
  "Arabidopsis thaliana", "Macaca thibetana", "Bacillus subtilis"
)
res <- taxaResolve(nms = my_lovely_names)
length(colnames(res)) # 10 different metadata for returned names including original search name
```

```
# let's look at the lineages
lineages <- strsplit(as.vector(res$lineage), "\\|")
print(lineages[[6]]) # the bacteria has far fewer taxonomic levels
```

---

TaxDict-class	<i>Taxonomic record dictionary</i>
---------------	------------------------------------

---

## Description

Taxonomic dictionary contains a taxonomic tree and NCBI taxonomy data for all taxonomic IDs.

## Usage

```
## S4 method for signature 'TaxDict'
as.character(x)

## S4 method for signature 'TaxDict'
show(object)

## S4 method for signature 'TaxDict'
print(x)

## S4 method for signature 'TaxDict'
str(object, max.level = 2L, ...)

## S4 method for signature 'TaxDict'
summary(object)
```

## Arguments

x	TaxDict object
object	TaxDict object
max.level	Maximum level of nesting for str()
...	Further arguments for str()

## Slots

txids	Taxonomic IDs of taxon records
recs	Environment of records
prnt	Parent taxonomic ID
txtr	Taxonomic tree

## See Also

Other run-public: [ClstrArc-class](#), [ClstrRec-class](#), [Phylota-class](#), [SeqArc-class](#), [SeqRec-class](#), [TaxRec-class](#), [clusters2\\_run\(\)](#), [clusters\\_run\(\)](#), [parameters\\_reset\(\)](#), [reset\(\)](#), [restart\(\)](#), [run\(\)](#), [setup\(\)](#), [taxise\\_run\(\)](#)

**Examples**

```

data('aotus')
txdct <- aotus@txdct
# this is a TaxDict object
# it contains taxonomic information, including records and tree
show(txdct)
# you can access its different data slots with @
txdct@txids # taxonomic IDs
txdct@recs  # taxonomic records environment
txdct@txtr  # taxonomic tree
txdct@prnt  # MRCA
# access any record through the records environment
txdct@recs[[txdct@txids[[1]]]]
# for interacting with the taxonomic tree, see the treeman package
summary(txdct@txtr)

```

---

taxdict\_gen

*Generate taxonomic dictionary*


---

**Description**

Takes a vector of txids and a list of taxonomic records and returns a taxonomic dictionary.

**Usage**

```
taxdict_gen(txids, recs, ps)
```

**Arguments**

txids	Vector of taxonomic IDs
recs	List of taxonomic records
ps	Parameters list, generated with parameters()

**Value**

TaxDict

**See Also**

Other run-private: [batcher\(\)](#), [blast\\_clstr\(\)](#), [blast\\_filter\(\)](#), [blast\\_setup\(\)](#), [blast\\_sqz\(\)](#), [blastcache\\_load\(\)](#), [blastcache\\_save\(\)](#), [blastdb\\_gen\(\)](#), [blastn\\_run\(\)](#), [cache\\_rm\(\)](#), [cache\\_setup\(\)](#), [clade\\_select\(\)](#), [clstr2\\_calc\(\)](#), [clstr\\_all\(\)](#), [clstr\\_direct\(\)](#), [clstr\\_sqz\(\)](#), [clstr\\_subtree\(\)](#), [clstrarc\\_gen\(\)](#), [clstrarc\\_join\(\)](#), [clstrrec\\_gen\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_calc\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_join\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_merge\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_renumber\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_save\(\)](#), [cmdln\(\)](#), [descendants\\_get\(\)](#), [download\\_obj\\_check\(\)](#), [error\(\)](#), [gb\\_extract\(\)](#), [hierarchic\\_download\(\)](#), [info\(\)](#), [ncbocache\\_load\(\)](#), [ncbocache\\_save\(\)](#), [obj\\_check\(\)](#), [obj\\_load\(\)](#), [obj\\_save\(\)](#), [outfmt\\_get\(\)](#), [parameters\\_load\(\)](#), [parameters\\_setup\(\)](#), [parent\\_get\(\)](#), [progress\\_init\(\)](#), [progress\\_read\(\)](#), [progress\\_reset\(\)](#), [progress\\_save\(\)](#), [rank\\_get\(\)](#), [rawseqrec\\_breakdown\(\)](#), [safely\\_connect\(\)](#), [search\\_and\\_cache\(\)](#), [searchterm\\_gen\(\)](#),



[seeds\\_blast\(\)](#), [seq\\_download\(\)](#), [seqarc\\_gen\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_augment\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_convert\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_gen\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_get\(\)](#), [sids\\_check\(\)](#), [sids\\_get\(\)](#), [sids\\_load\(\)](#), [sids\\_save\(\)](#), [sqs\\_count\(\)](#), [sqs\\_save\(\)](#), [stage\\_args\\_check\(\)](#), [stages\\_run\(\)](#), [tax\\_download\(\)](#), [taxtree\\_gen\(\)](#), [txids\\_get\(\)](#), [txnds\\_count\(\)](#), [warn\(\)](#)

---

taxise_run	<i>Run taxise stage</i>
------------	-------------------------

---

## Description

Run the first stage of phylotaR, taxise. This looks up all descendant taxonomic nodes for a given taxonomic ID. It then looks up relevant taxonomic information and generates a taxonomic dictionary for user interaction after phylotaR has completed.

## Usage

```
taxise_run(wd)
```

## Arguments

wd	Working directory
----	-------------------

## Details

Objects will be cached.

## See Also

Other run-public: [ClstrArc-class](#), [ClstrRec-class](#), [Phylota-class](#), [SeqArc-class](#), [SeqRec-class](#), [TaxDict-class](#), [TaxRec-class](#), [clusters2\\_run\(\)](#), [clusters\\_run\(\)](#), [parameters\\_reset\(\)](#), [reset\(\)](#), [restart\(\)](#), [run\(\)](#), [setup\(\)](#)

## Examples

```
## Not run:

# Note: this example requires BLAST and internet to run.

# example with temp folder
wd <- file.path(tempdir(), 'aotus')
# setup for aotus, make sure aotus/ folder already exists
if (!dir.exists(wd)) {
  dir.create(wd)
}
ncbi_dr <- '[SET BLAST+ BIN PATH HERE]'
setup(wd = wd, txid = 9504, ncbi_dr = ncbi_dr) # txid for Aotus primate genus
# individually run stages
taxise_run(wd = wd)

## End(Not run)
```

---

TaxRec-class	<i>Taxonomic record</i>
--------------	-------------------------

---

**Description**

Taxonomic dictionary contains a taxonomic tree and NCBI taxonomy data for all taxonomic IDs.

**Usage**

```
## S4 method for signature 'TaxRec'
as.character(x)
```

```
## S4 method for signature 'TaxRec'
show(object)
```

```
## S4 method for signature 'TaxRec'
print(x)
```

```
## S4 method for signature 'TaxRec'
str(object, max.level = 2L, ...)
```

```
## S4 method for signature 'TaxRec'
summary(object)
```

**Arguments**

x	TaxRec object
object	TaxRec object
max.level	Maximum level of nesting for str()
...	Further arguments for str()

**Slots**

id	Taxonomic ID
scnm	Scientific name
cmnm	Common name
rnk	Rank
lng	Lineage
prnt	Parent

**See Also**

Other run-public: [ClstrArc-class](#), [ClstrRec-class](#), [Phylota-class](#), [SeqArc-class](#), [SeqRec-class](#), [TaxDict-class](#), [clusters2\\_run\(\)](#), [clusters\\_run\(\)](#), [parameters\\_reset\(\)](#), [reset\(\)](#), [restart\(\)](#), [run\(\)](#), [setup\(\)](#), [taxise\\_run\(\)](#)

**Examples**

```

data('aotus')
taxrec <- aotus@txdct@recs[[aotus@txdct@txids[[1]]]]
# this is a TaxRec object
# it contains NCBI's taxonomic information for a single node
show(taxrec)
# you can access its different data slots with @
taxrec@id      # taxonomic ID
taxrec@scnm    # scientific name
taxrec@cmmn    # common name, '' if none
taxrec@rnk     # rank
taxrec@lng     # lineage information: list of IDs and ranks
taxrec@prnt    # parent ID

```

---

taxtree\_gen

*Generate taxonomic tree*


---

**Description**

Generate a taxonomic tree for easy look up of taxonomic parents and descendants.

**Usage**

```
taxtree_gen(prinds, ids, root, ps)
```

**Arguments**

prinds	Vector of integers indicating preceding node.
ids	Vector of taxonomic IDs
root	ID of root taxon
ps	Parameters list, generated with parameters()

**Value**

TreeMan  
TreeMan class

**See Also**

Other run-private: [batcher\(\)](#), [blast\\_clstr\(\)](#), [blast\\_filter\(\)](#), [blast\\_setup\(\)](#), [blast\\_sqz\(\)](#), [blastcache\\_load\(\)](#), [blastcache\\_save\(\)](#), [blastdb\\_gen\(\)](#), [blastn\\_run\(\)](#), [cache\\_rm\(\)](#), [cache\\_setup\(\)](#), [clade\\_select\(\)](#), [clstr2\\_calc\(\)](#), [clstr\\_all\(\)](#), [clstr\\_direct\(\)](#), [clstr\\_sqz\(\)](#), [clstr\\_subtree\(\)](#), [clstrarc\\_gen\(\)](#), [clstrarc\\_join\(\)](#), [clstrrec\\_gen\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_calc\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_join\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_merge\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_renumber\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_save\(\)](#), [cmdln\(\)](#), [descendants\\_get\(\)](#), [download\\_obj\\_check\(\)](#), [error\(\)](#), [gb\\_extract\(\)](#), [hierarchic\\_download\(\)](#), [info\(\)](#), [ncbocache\\_load\(\)](#), [ncbocache\\_save\(\)](#), [obj\\_check\(\)](#), [obj\\_load\(\)](#), [obj\\_save\(\)](#), [outfmt\\_get\(\)](#), [parameters\\_load\(\)](#), [parameters\\_setup\(\)](#), [parent\\_get\(\)](#), [progress\\_init\(\)](#), [progress\\_read\(\)](#), [progress\\_reset\(\)](#), [progress\\_save\(\)](#),

rank\_get(), rawseqrec\_breakdown(), safely\_connect(), search\_and\_cache(), searchterm\_gen(), seeds\_blast(), seq\_download(), seqarc\_gen(), seqrec\_augment(), seqrec\_convert(), seqrec\_gen(), seqrec\_get(), sids\_check(), sids\_get(), sids\_load(), sids\_save(), sqs\_count(), sqs\_save(), stage\_args\_check(), stages\_run(), tax\_download(), taxdict\_gen(), txids\_get(), txnds\_count(), warn()

---

tax\_download

*Download taxonomic records*

---

### Description

Downloads one batch of taxonomic records.

### Usage

```
tax_download(ids, ps)
```

### Arguments

ids	Vector of taxonomic IDs
ps	Parameters list, generated with parameters()

### Value

list of list

### See Also

Other run-private: [batcher\(\)](#), [blast\\_clstr\(\)](#), [blast\\_filter\(\)](#), [blast\\_setup\(\)](#), [blast\\_sqs\(\)](#), [blastcache\\_load\(\)](#), [blastcache\\_save\(\)](#), [blastdb\\_gen\(\)](#), [blastn\\_run\(\)](#), [cache\\_rm\(\)](#), [cache\\_setup\(\)](#), [clade\\_select\(\)](#), [clstr2\\_calc\(\)](#), [clstr\\_all\(\)](#), [clstr\\_direct\(\)](#), [clstr\\_sqs\(\)](#), [clstr\\_subtree\(\)](#), [clstrarc\\_gen\(\)](#), [clstrarc\\_join\(\)](#), [clstrrec\\_gen\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_calc\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_join\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_merge\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_renumber\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_save\(\)](#), [cmdln\(\)](#), [descendants\\_get\(\)](#), [download\\_obj\\_check\(\)](#), [error\(\)](#), [gb\\_extract\(\)](#), [hierarchic\\_download\(\)](#), [info\(\)](#), [ncbocache\\_load\(\)](#), [ncbocache\\_save\(\)](#), [obj\\_check\(\)](#), [obj\\_load\(\)](#), [obj\\_save\(\)](#), [outfmt\\_get\(\)](#), [parameters\\_load\(\)](#), [parameters\\_setup\(\)](#), [parent\\_get\(\)](#), [progress\\_init\(\)](#), [progress\\_read\(\)](#), [progress\\_reset\(\)](#), [progress\\_save\(\)](#), [rank\\_get\(\)](#), [rawseqrec\\_breakdown\(\)](#), [safely\\_connect\(\)](#), [search\\_and\\_cache\(\)](#), [searchterm\\_gen\(\)](#), [seeds\\_blast\(\)](#), [seq\\_download\(\)](#), [seqarc\\_gen\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_augment\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_convert\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_gen\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_get\(\)](#), [sids\\_check\(\)](#), [sids\\_get\(\)](#), [sids\\_load\(\)](#), [sids\\_save\(\)](#), [sqs\\_count\(\)](#), [sqs\\_save\(\)](#), [stage\\_args\\_check\(\)](#), [stages\\_run\(\)](#), [taxdict\\_gen\(\)](#), [taxtree\\_gen\(\)](#), [txids\\_get\(\)](#), [txnds\\_count\(\)](#), [warn\(\)](#)

---

tinamous	<i>tinamous</i>
----------	-----------------

---

**Description**

tinamous

**Format**

A TreeMan or Phylota object

**Examples**

```
data("tinamous")
```

---

TreeMan-class	<i>TreeMan-class</i>
---------------	----------------------

---

**Description**

S4 class for representing phylogenetic trees as a list of nodes.

**Usage**

```
## S4 method for signature 'TreeMan,character'
x[[i]]

## S4 method for signature 'TreeMan,character,missing,missing'
x[i, j, ..., drop = TRUE]

## S4 method for signature 'TreeMan'
as.character(x)

## S4 method for signature 'TreeMan'
show(object)

## S4 method for signature 'TreeMan'
print(x)

## S4 method for signature 'TreeMan'
str(object, max.level = 2L, ...)

## S4 method for signature 'TreeMan'
summary(object)

## S4 method for signature 'TreeMan'
cTrees(x, ...)
```

**Arguments**

x	TreeMan object
i	node ID or slot name
j	missing
...	additional tree objects
drop	missing
object	TreeMan object
max.level	str() maximum number of levels to show

**Details**

A TreeMan object holds a list of nodes. The idea of the TreeMan class is to make adding and removing nodes as similar as possible to adding and removing elements in a list. Note that internal nodes and tips are both considered nodes. Trees can be polytomous but not unrooted.

Each node within the TreeMan ndlst contains the following data slots:

- id: character string for the node ID
- txnym: name of taxonomic clade (optional)
- spn: length of the preceding branch
- prid: ID of the immediately preceding node, NULL if root
- ptid: IDs of the immediately connecting nodes

See below in 'Examples' for these methods in use.

**Slots**

ndlst	list of nodes
nds	vector of node ids that are internal nodes
nnds	numeric of number of internal nodes in tree
tips	vector of node ids that are tips
ntips	numeric of number of internal nodes in tree
all	vector of all node ids
nall	numeric of number of all nodes in tree
pd	numeric of total branch length of tree
tinds	indexes of all tip nodes in tree
prinds	indexes of all pre-nodes in tree
wspn	logical, do nodes have spans
wtxnyms	logical, do nodes have txnyms
ply	logical, is tree bifurcating
root	character of node id of root, if no root then empty character
updt	logical, if tree slots have been updated since initiation or change
othr_slt_nms	vector, character list of additional data slots added to nodes
ndmtrx	matrix, T/Fs representing tree structure

**See Also**

[randTree](#), [Node-class](#), [phylo-to-TreeMan](#), [TreeMan-to-phylo](#)

**Examples**

```
# Generate random tree
tree <- randTree(10)
# Print to get basic stats
summary(tree)
# Slots...
tree["tips"] # return all tips IDs
tree["nds"] # return all internal node IDs
tree["ntips"] # count all tips
tree["nnds"] # count all internal nodes
tree["root"] # identify root node
tree[["t1"]] # return t1 node object
tree["pd"] # return phylogenetic diversity
tree["ply"] # is polytomous?
# Additional special slots (calculated upon call)
tree["age"] # get tree's age
tree["ultr"] # determine if tree is ultrametric
tree["spns"] # get all the spans of the tree IDs
tree["prids"] # get all the IDs of preceding nodes
tree["ptids"] # get all the IDs of following nodes
tree["txnyms"] # get all the taxonyms of all nodes
# In addition [] can be used for any user-defined slot
# Because all nodes are lists with metadata we can readily
# get specific information on nodes of interest
nd <- tree[["n2"]]
summary(nd)
# And then use the same syntax for the tree
nd["nkids"] # .... nkids, pd, etc.

# Convert to phylo and plot
library(ape)
tree <- as(tree, "phylo")
plot(tree)
```

---

TreeMan-to-phylo

*Convert TreeMan to phylo*

---

**Description**

Return ape's phylo from a TreeMan. This will preserve node labels if they are different from the default labels (n#).

**See Also**

[phylo-to-TreeMan](#), [TreeMen-to-multiPhylo](#) [multiPhylo-to-TreeMen](#) [TreeMan-class](#)

**Examples**

```
library(ape)
tree <- randTree(10)
tree <- as(tree, "phylo")
```

---

TreeMen-class

*TreeMen-class*


---

**Description**

S4 class for multiple phylogenetic trees

**Usage**

```
## S4 method for signature 'TreeMen'
cTrees(x, ...)

## S4 method for signature 'TreeMen,ANY'
x[[i]]

## S4 method for signature 'TreeMen,character,missing,missing'
x[i, j, ..., drop = TRUE]

## S4 method for signature 'TreeMen'
as.character(x)

## S4 method for signature 'TreeMen'
show(object)

## S4 method for signature 'TreeMen'
str(object, max.level = 2L, ...)

## S4 method for signature 'TreeMen'
print(x)

## S4 method for signature 'TreeMen'
summary(object)
```

**Arguments**

x	TreeMen object
...	additional tree objects
i	tree index (integer or character)
j	missing
drop	missing
object	TreeMen object
max.level	str() maximum level



**Slots**

treelst list of TreeMan objects  
 ntips sum of tips per tree  
 ntrees total number of trees

**See Also**

[cTrees](#)

---

TreeMen-to-multiPhylo *Convert TreeMen to multiPhylo*

---

**Description**

Return ape's multiPhylo from a TreeMen

**See Also**

[TreeMan-to-phylo](#), [phylo-to-TreeMan](#), [multiPhylo-to-TreeMen](#) [TreeMan-class](#)

**Examples**

```
library(ape)
trees <- cTrees(randTree(10), randTree(10), randTree(10))
trees <- as(trees, "multiPhylo")
```

---

twoer *Generate a tree of two tips*

---

**Description**

Returns a TreeMan tree with two tips and a root.

**Usage**

```
twoer(tids = c("t1", "t2"), spns = c(1, 1), rid = "root", root_spn = 0)
```

**Arguments**

tids	tip IDs
spns	tip spans
rid	root ID
root_spn	root span

**Details**

Useful for building larger trees with `addClade()`. Note, a node matrix cannot be added to a tree of two tips.

**See Also**

[TreeMan-class](#), [randTree](#)

**Examples**

```
tree <- twoer()
```

---

txids\_get

*Searches for descendant taxonomic IDs*

---

**Description**

Searches NCBI taxonomy for all descendant taxonomic nodes.

**Usage**

```
txids_get(ps, retmax = 10000)
```

**Arguments**

ps	Parameters list, generated with <code>parameters()</code>
retmax	integer, maximum number of IDs to return per query

**Value**

Vector of txids  
vector of ids

**See Also**

Other run-private: `batcher()`, `blast_clstr()`, `blast_filter()`, `blast_setup()`, `blast_sqs()`, `blastcache_load()`, `blastcache_save()`, `blastdb_gen()`, `blastn_run()`, `cache_rm()`, `cache_setup()`, `clade_select()`, `clstr2_calc()`, `clstr_all()`, `clstr_direct()`, `clstr_sqs()`, `clstr_subtree()`, `clstrarc_gen()`, `clstrarc_join()`, `clstrrec_gen()`, `clstrs_calc()`, `clstrs_join()`, `clstrs_merge()`, `clstrs_renumber()`, `clstrs_save()`, `cmdln()`, `descendants_get()`, `download_obj_check()`, `error()`, `gb_extract()`, `hierarchic_download()`, `info()`, `ncbocache_load()`, `ncbocache_save()`, `obj_check()`, `obj_load()`, `obj_save()`, `outfmt_get()`, `parameters_load()`, `parameters_setup()`, `parent_get()`, `progress_init()`, `progress_read()`, `progress_reset()`, `progress_save()`, `rank_get()`, `rawseqrec_breakdown()`, `safely_connect()`, `search_and_cache()`, `searchterm_gen()`, `seeds_blast()`, `seq_download()`, `seqarc_gen()`, `seqrec_augment()`, `seqrec_convert()`, `seqrec_gen()`, `seqrec_get()`, `sids_check()`, `sids_get()`, `sids_load()`, `sids_save()`, `sqs_count()`, `sqs_save()`, `stage_args_check()`, `stages_run()`, `tax_download()`, `taxdict_gen()`, `taxtree_gen()`, `txnds_count()`, `warn()`

---

txnds_count	<i>Count number of descending taxonomic nodes</i>
-------------	---

---

**Description**

Searches NCBI taxonomy and returns number of descendants taxonomic nodes (species, genera ...) of ID.

**Usage**

```
txnds_count(txid, ps)
```

**Arguments**

txid	Taxonomic ID
ps	Parameters list, generated with parameters()

**Value**

integer

**See Also**

Other run-private: [batcher\(\)](#), [blast\\_clstr\(\)](#), [blast\\_filter\(\)](#), [blast\\_setup\(\)](#), [blast\\_sqs\(\)](#), [blastcache\\_load\(\)](#), [blastcache\\_save\(\)](#), [blastdb\\_gen\(\)](#), [blastn\\_run\(\)](#), [cache\\_rm\(\)](#), [cache\\_setup\(\)](#), [clade\\_select\(\)](#), [clstr2\\_calc\(\)](#), [clstr\\_all\(\)](#), [clstr\\_direct\(\)](#), [clstr\\_sqs\(\)](#), [clstr\\_subtree\(\)](#), [clstrarc\\_gen\(\)](#), [clstrarc\\_join\(\)](#), [clstrrec\\_gen\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_calc\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_join\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_merge\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_renumber\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_save\(\)](#), [cmdln\(\)](#), [descendants\\_get\(\)](#), [download\\_obj\\_check\(\)](#), [error\(\)](#), [gb\\_extract\(\)](#), [hierarchic\\_download\(\)](#), [info\(\)](#), [ncbocache\\_load\(\)](#), [ncbocache\\_save\(\)](#), [obj\\_check\(\)](#), [obj\\_load\(\)](#), [obj\\_save\(\)](#), [outfmt\\_get\(\)](#), [parameters\\_load\(\)](#), [parameters\\_setup\(\)](#), [parent\\_get\(\)](#), [progress\\_init\(\)](#), [progress\\_read\(\)](#), [progress\\_reset\(\)](#), [progress\\_save\(\)](#), [rank\\_get\(\)](#), [rawseqrec\\_breakdown\(\)](#), [safely\\_connect\(\)](#), [search\\_and\\_cache\(\)](#), [searchterm\\_gen\(\)](#), [seeds\\_blast\(\)](#), [seq\\_download\(\)](#), [seqarc\\_gen\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_augment\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_convert\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_gen\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_get\(\)](#), [sids\\_check\(\)](#), [sids\\_get\(\)](#), [sids\\_load\(\)](#), [sids\\_save\(\)](#), [sqs\\_count\(\)](#), [sqs\\_save\(\)](#), [stage\\_args\\_check\(\)](#), [stages\\_run\(\)](#), [tax\\_download\(\)](#), [taxdict\\_gen\(\)](#), [taxtree\\_gen\(\)](#), [txids\\_get\(\)](#), [warn\(\)](#)

---

ultrTree	<i>Make tree ultrametric</i>
----------	------------------------------

---

**Description**

Returns a tree with all tips ending at time 0

**Usage**

```
ultrTree(tree)
```

**Arguments**

tree            TreeMan object

**Details**

Re-calculates the branch lengths in the tree so that all tips are brought to the same time point: all species are extant.

**See Also**

<https://github.com/DomBennett/treeman/wiki/manip-methods>

**Examples**

```
tree <- randTree(10)
(getDcsd(tree)) # list all extinct tips
tree <- ultrTree(tree)
(getDcsd(tree)) # list all extinct tips
```

---

unblncdTree

*Generate an unbalanced tree*


---

**Description**

Returns an unbalanced TreeMan tree with n tips.

**Usage**

```
unblncdTree(n, wndmtrx = FALSE, parallel = FALSE)
```

**Arguments**

n                    number of tips, integer, must be 3 or greater  
wndmtrx            T/F add node matrix? Default FALSE.  
parallel            T/F run in parallel? Default FALSE.

**Details**

Equivalent to ape's `stree(type='left')` but returns a TreeMan tree. Tree is always rooted and bifurcating.

**See Also**

[TreeMan-class](#), [randTree](#), [blncdTree](#)

**Examples**

```
tree <- unblncdTree(5)
```

---

updateSlts	<i>Update tree slots after manipulation</i>
------------	---

---

**Description**

Return tree with updated slots.

**Usage**

```
updateSlts(tree)
```

**Arguments**

tree	TreeMan object
------	----------------

**Details**

Tree slots in the TreeMan object are usually automatically updated. For certain single node manipulations they are not. Run this function to update the slots.

**See Also**

[addNdmtrx](#), [getAge](#)

---

update_phylota	<i>Update slots</i>
----------------	---------------------

---

**Description**

After change, run to update slots.

**Usage**

```
update_phylota(phylota)
```

**Arguments**

phylota	Phylota
---------	---------

**Value**

Phylota

**See Also**

Other tools-private: [mk\\_txid\\_in\\_sq\\_mtrx\(\)](#), [summary\\_phylota\(\)](#)

---

warn	<i>Write warning message to log</i>
------	-------------------------------------

---

### Description

Inform a user if a potential error has occurred in log.txt.

### Usage

```
warn(ps, ...)
```

### Arguments

ps	Parameters list, generated with parameters()
...	Message elements for concatenating

### See Also

Other run-private: [batcher\(\)](#), [blast\\_clstr\(\)](#), [blast\\_filter\(\)](#), [blast\\_setup\(\)](#), [blast\\_sqz\(\)](#), [blastcache\\_load\(\)](#), [blastcache\\_save\(\)](#), [blastdb\\_gen\(\)](#), [blastn\\_run\(\)](#), [cache\\_rm\(\)](#), [cache\\_setup\(\)](#), [clade\\_select\(\)](#), [clstr2\\_calc\(\)](#), [clstr\\_all\(\)](#), [clstr\\_direct\(\)](#), [clstr\\_sqz\(\)](#), [clstr\\_subtree\(\)](#), [clstrarc\\_gen\(\)](#), [clstrarc\\_join\(\)](#), [clstrrec\\_gen\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_calc\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_join\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_merge\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_renumber\(\)](#), [clstrs\\_save\(\)](#), [cmdln\(\)](#), [descendants\\_get\(\)](#), [download\\_obj\\_check\(\)](#), [error\(\)](#), [gb\\_extract\(\)](#), [hierarchic\\_download\(\)](#), [info\(\)](#), [ncbocache\\_load\(\)](#), [ncbocache\\_save\(\)](#), [obj\\_check\(\)](#), [obj\\_load\(\)](#), [obj\\_save\(\)](#), [outfmt\\_get\(\)](#), [parameters\\_load\(\)](#), [parameters\\_setup\(\)](#), [parent\\_get\(\)](#), [progress\\_init\(\)](#), [progress\\_read\(\)](#), [progress\\_reset\(\)](#), [progress\\_save\(\)](#), [rank\\_get\(\)](#), [rawseqrec\\_breakdown\(\)](#), [safely\\_connect\(\)](#), [search\\_and\\_cache\(\)](#), [searchterm\\_gen\(\)](#), [seeds\\_blast\(\)](#), [seq\\_download\(\)](#), [seqarc\\_gen\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_augment\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_convert\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_gen\(\)](#), [seqrec\\_get\(\)](#), [sids\\_check\(\)](#), [sids\\_get\(\)](#), [sids\\_load\(\)](#), [sids\\_save\(\)](#), [sqz\\_count\(\)](#), [sqz\\_save\(\)](#), [stage\\_args\\_check\(\)](#), [stages\\_run\(\)](#), [tax\\_download\(\)](#), [taxdict\\_gen\(\)](#), [taxtree\\_gen\(\)](#), [txids\\_get\(\)](#), [txnds\\_count\(\)](#)

---

writeTree	<i>Write a Newick tree</i>
-----------	----------------------------

---

### Description

Creates a Newick tree from a TreeMan object.

**Usage**

```
writeTree(  
  tree,  
  file,  
  append = FALSE,  
  ndLabels = function(nd) {  
    return(NULL)  
  },  
  parallel = FALSE,  
  progress = "none"  
)
```

**Arguments**

tree	TreeMan object
file	file path
append	T/F append tree to already existing file
ndLabels	node label function
parallel	logical, make parallel?
progress	name of the progress bar to use, see <a href="#">create_progress_bar</a>

**Details**

The ndLabels argument can be used to add a user defined node label in the Newick tree. It should take only 1 argument, nd, the node represented as a list. It should only return a single character value that can be added to a newick string.

**See Also**

[https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Newick\\_format](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Newick_format), [readTree](#), [randTree](#), [readTrmn](#), [writeTrmn](#), [saveTreeMan](#), [loadTreeMan](#)

**Examples**

```
tree <- randTree(10)  
# write out the tree with node labels as IDs  
ndLabels <- function(n) {  
  n[["id"]]  
}  
writeTree(tree, file = "example.tre", ndLabels = ndLabels)  
file.remove("example.tre")
```

---

`writeTrmn`*Write a .trmn tree*

---

**Description**

Write to disk a TreeMan or TreeMen object using the .trmn treefile

**Usage**

```
writeTrmn(tree, file)
```

**Arguments**

<code>tree</code>	TreeMan object or TreeMen object
<code>file</code>	file path

**Details**

Write a tree(s) to file using the .trmn format. It is faster to read and write tree files using treeman with the .trmn file format. In addition it is possible to encode more information than possible with the Newick, e.g. any taxonomic information and additional slot names added to the tree are recorded in the file.

**See Also**

[readTrmn](#), [readTree](#), [writeTree](#), [randTree](#), [saveTreeMan](#), [loadTreeMan](#)

**Examples**

```
tree <- randTree(10)
writeTrmn(tree, file = "test.trmn")
tree <- readTrmn("test.trmn")
file.remove("test.trmn")
```

---

`write_sq`*Write out sequences*

---

**Description**

Write out sequences, as .fasta, for a given vector of IDs.

**Usage**

```
write_sq(phyloata, outfile, sid, sq_nm = sid, width = 80)
```



**Arguments**

phylota	Phylota
outfile	Output file
sid	Sequence ID(s)
sq_nm	Sequence name(s)
width	Maximum number of characters in a line, integer

**Details**

The user can control the output definition lines of the sequences using the `sq_nm`. By default sequences IDs are used. Note, ensure the `sq_nm` are in the same order as `sid`.

**See Also**

Other tools-public: [calc\\_mad\(\)](#), [calc\\_wrdfreq\(\)](#), [drop\\_by\\_rank\(\)](#), [drop\\_clstrs\(\)](#), [drop\\_sqs\(\)](#), [get\\_clstr\\_slot\(\)](#), [get\\_nsqs\(\)](#), [get\\_ntaxa\(\)](#), [get\\_sq\\_slot\(\)](#), [get\\_stage\\_times\(\)](#), [get\\_tx\\_slot\(\)](#), [get\\_txids\(\)](#), [is\\_txid\\_in\\_clstr\(\)](#), [is\\_txid\\_in\\_sq\(\)](#), [list\\_clstrrec\\_slots\(\)](#), [list\\_ncbi\\_ranks\(\)](#), [list\\_seqrec\\_slots\(\)](#), [list\\_taxrec\\_slots\(\)](#), [plot\\_phylota\\_pa\(\)](#), [plot\\_phylota\\_treemap\(\)](#), [read\\_phylota\(\)](#)

**Examples**

```
data('aotus')
# get sequences for a cluster and write out
random_cid <- sample(aotus@cids, 1)
sids <- aotus[[random_cid]]@sids
write_sqs(phylota = aotus, outfile = file.path(tempdir(), 'test.fasta'),
         sq_nm = 'my_gene', sid = sids)
```

---

yeasts

*yeasts*

---

**Description**

yeasts

**Format**

A TreeMan or Phylota object

**Examples**

```
data("yeasts")
```

# Index

- \* **public-pipeline**
  - parameters, 99
- \* **run-private**
  - batcher, 9
  - blast\_clstr, 13
  - blast\_filter, 14
  - blast\_setup, 15
  - blast\_sqs, 16
  - blastcache\_load, 10
  - blastcache\_save, 11
  - blastdb\_gen, 12
  - blastn\_run, 13
  - cache\_rm, 18
  - cache\_setup, 19
  - clade\_select, 31
  - clstr2\_calc, 32
  - clstr\_all, 42
  - clstr\_direct, 43
  - clstr\_sqs, 44
  - clstr\_subtree, 44
  - clstrarc\_gen, 34
  - clstrarc\_join, 35
  - clstrrec\_gen, 37
  - clstrs\_calc, 38
  - clstrs\_join, 39
  - clstrs\_merge, 40
  - clstrs\_renumber, 40
  - clstrs\_save, 41
  - cmdln, 47
  - descendants\_get, 49
  - download\_obj\_check, 50
  - error, 55
  - gb\_extract, 56
  - hierarchic\_download, 85
  - info, 86
  - ncbocache\_load, 94
  - ncbocache\_save, 94
  - obj\_check, 96
  - obj\_load, 97
  - obj\_save, 98
  - outfmt\_get, 99
  - parameters\_load, 101
  - parameters\_setup, 103
  - parent\_get, 104
  - progress\_init, 111
  - progress\_read, 111
  - progress\_reset, 112
  - progress\_save, 113
  - rank\_get, 115
  - rawseqrec\_breakdown, 116
  - safely\_connect, 126
  - search\_and\_cache, 130
  - searchterm\_gen, 128
  - seeds\_blast, 131
  - seq\_download, 140
  - seqarc\_gen, 133
  - seqrec\_augment, 136
  - seqrec\_convert, 137
  - seqrec\_gen, 137
  - seqrec\_get, 139
  - sids\_check, 149
  - sids\_get, 150
  - sids\_load, 151
  - sids\_save, 152
  - sqs\_count, 153
  - sqs\_save, 154
  - stage\_args\_check, 155
  - stages\_run, 155
  - tax\_download, 164
  - taxdict\_gen, 160
  - taxtree\_gen, 163
  - txids\_get, 170
  - txnds\_count, 171
  - warn, 174
- \* **run-public**
  - ClstrArc-class, 33
  - ClstrRec-class, 36
  - clusters2\_run, 45

- clusters\_run, 46
- parameters\_reset, 102
- Phylota-class, 105
- reset, 119
- restart, 120
- run, 125
- SeqArc-class, 131
- SeqRec-class, 134
- setup, 148
- TaxDict-class, 159
- taxise\_run, 161
- TaxRec-class, 162
- \* tools-private**
  - mk\_txid\_in\_sq\_mtrx, 92
  - summary\_phylota, 157
  - update\_phylota, 173
- \* tools-public**
  - calc\_mad, 28
  - calc\_wrdfreq, 29
  - drop\_by\_rank, 52
  - drop\_clstrs, 53
  - drop\_sqs, 54
  - get\_clstr\_slot, 79
  - get\_nsqs, 79
  - get\_ntaxa, 80
  - get\_sq\_slot, 81
  - get\_stage\_times, 82
  - get\_tx\_slot, 84
  - get\_txids, 83
  - is\_txid\_in\_clstr, 87
  - is\_txid\_in\_sq, 88
  - list\_clstrec\_slots, 89
  - list\_ncbi\_ranks, 90
  - list\_seqrec\_slots, 90
  - list\_taxrec\_slots, 91
  - plot\_phylota\_pa, 108
  - plot\_phylota\_treemap, 109
  - read\_phylota, 119
  - write\_sqs, 176
- [, ClstrArc, character, missing, missing-method (ClstrArc-class), 33
- [, Node, character, missing, missing-method (Node-class), 95
- [, SeqArc, character, missing, missing-method (SeqArc-class), 131
- [, TreeMan, character, missing, missing-method (TreeMan-class), 165
- [, TreeMen, character, missing, missing-method (TreeMen-class), 168
- [[, ClstrArc, character-method (ClstrArc-class), 33
- [[, Phylota, character-method (Phylota-class), 105
- [[, SeqArc, character-method (SeqArc-class), 131
- [[, TreeMan, character-method (TreeMan-class), 165
- [[, TreeMen, ANY-method (TreeMen-class), 168
- a (TreeMen-class), 168
- addClade, 6, 78, 122
- addNdmtx, 7, 114, 117, 122, 173
- addTip, 8, 107, 123, 125
- aotus, 9
- as.character, ClstrArc-method (ClstrArc-class), 33
- as.character, ClstrRec-method (ClstrRec-class), 36
- as.character, Node-method (Node-class), 95
- as.character, Phylota-method (Phylota-class), 105
- as.character, SeqArc-method (SeqArc-class), 131
- as.character, SeqRec-method (SeqRec-class), 134
- as.character, TaxDict-method (TaxDict-class), 159
- as.character, TaxRec-method (TaxRec-class), 162
- as.character, TreeMan-method (TreeMan-class), 165
- as.character, TreeMen-method (TreeMen-class), 168
- batcher, 9, 11–16, 18, 19, 32, 34, 35, 38–45, 48–50, 55, 57, 85, 86, 94, 95, 97–99, 102–104, 111–113, 115, 116, 126, 128, 130, 131, 133, 136–140, 150–156, 160, 163, 164, 170, 171, 174
- birds, 10
- blast\_clstr, 10–13, 13, 15, 16, 18, 19, 32, 34, 35, 38–45, 48–50, 55, 57, 85, 86, 94, 95, 97–99, 102–104, 111–113, 115, 116, 126, 128, 130, 131, 133,

- 136–140, 150–156, 160, 163, 164,  
 170, 171, 174  
 blast\_filter, 10–14, 14, 16, 18, 19, 32, 34,  
 35, 38–45, 48–50, 55, 57, 85, 86, 94,  
 95, 97–99, 102–104, 111–113, 115,  
 116, 126, 128, 130, 131, 133,  
 136–140, 150–156, 160, 163, 164,  
 170, 171, 174  
 blast\_setup, 10–15, 15, 16, 18, 19, 32, 34,  
 35, 38–45, 48–50, 55, 57, 85, 86, 94,  
 95, 97–99, 102–104, 111–113, 115,  
 116, 126, 128, 130, 131, 133,  
 136–140, 150–156, 160, 163, 164,  
 170, 171, 174  
 blast\_sq, 10–16, 16, 18, 19, 32, 34, 35,  
 38–45, 48–50, 55, 57, 85, 86, 94, 95,  
 97–99, 102–104, 111–113, 115, 116,  
 126, 128, 130, 131, 133, 136–140,  
 150–156, 160, 163, 164, 170, 171,  
 174  
 blastcache\_load, 10, 10, 12–16, 18, 19, 32,  
 34, 35, 38–45, 48–50, 55, 57, 85, 86,  
 94, 95, 97–99, 102–104, 111–113,  
 115, 116, 126, 128, 130, 131, 133,  
 136–140, 150–156, 160, 163, 164,  
 170, 171, 174  
 blastcache\_save, 10, 11, 11, 12–16, 18, 19,  
 32, 34, 35, 38–45, 48–50, 55, 57, 85,  
 86, 94, 95, 97–99, 102–104,  
 111–113, 115, 116, 126, 128, 130,  
 131, 133, 136–140, 150–156, 160,  
 163, 164, 170, 171, 174  
 blastdb\_gen, 10–12, 12, 13–16, 18, 19, 32,  
 34, 35, 38–45, 48–50, 55, 57, 85, 86,  
 94, 95, 97–99, 102–104, 111–113,  
 115, 116, 126, 128, 130, 131, 133,  
 136–140, 150–156, 160, 163, 164,  
 170, 171, 174  
 blastn\_run, 10–12, 13, 14–16, 18, 19, 32, 34,  
 35, 38–45, 48–50, 55, 57, 85, 86, 94,  
 95, 97–99, 102–104, 111–113, 115,  
 116, 126, 128, 130, 131, 133,  
 136–140, 150–156, 160, 163, 164,  
 170, 171, 174  
 blncdTree, 17, 115, 172  
 bromeliads, 18  
 cache\_rm, 10–16, 18, 19, 32, 34, 35, 38–45,  
 48–50, 55, 57, 85, 86, 94, 95, 97–99,  
 102–104, 111–113, 115, 116, 126,  
 128, 130, 131, 133, 136–140,  
 150–156, 160, 163, 164, 170, 171,  
 174  
 cache\_setup, 10–16, 18, 19, 32, 34, 35,  
 38–45, 48–50, 55, 57, 85, 86, 94, 95,  
 97–99, 102–104, 111–113, 115, 116,  
 126, 128, 130, 131, 133, 136–140,  
 150–156, 160, 163, 164, 170, 171,  
 174  
 calc\_mad, 28, 29, 52, 54, 55, 79–84, 87–91,  
 109, 110, 119, 177  
 calc\_wrdfrq, 28, 29, 52, 54, 55, 79–84,  
 87–91, 109, 110, 119, 177  
 calcDstBLD, 19, 21, 22  
 calcDstMtrx, 20  
 calcDstRF, 20, 21, 21, 22, 58  
 calcDstTrp, 20–22, 22  
 calcFrPrp, 23, 27, 59, 78  
 calcNdBlnc, 24, 25  
 calcNdsBlnc, 24, 24  
 calcOvr1p, 25, 27  
 calcPhyDv, 23, 26, 26, 59, 78  
 calcPrtFrPrp, 23, 27  
 checkNd1st, 30, 31, 56  
 checkTreeMen, 30, 31, 56  
 clade\_select, 10–16, 18, 19, 31, 32, 34, 35,  
 38–45, 48–50, 55, 57, 85, 86, 94, 95,  
 97–99, 102–104, 111–113, 115, 116,  
 126, 128, 130, 131, 133, 136–140,  
 150–156, 160, 163, 164, 170, 171,  
 174  
 clstr2\_calc, 10–16, 18, 19, 32, 32, 34, 35,  
 38–45, 48–50, 55, 57, 85, 86, 94, 95,  
 97–99, 102–104, 111–113, 115, 116,  
 126, 128, 130, 131, 133, 136–140,  
 150–156, 160, 163, 164, 170, 171,  
 174  
 clstr\_all, 10–16, 18, 19, 32, 34, 35, 38–41,  
 42, 43–45, 48–50, 55, 57, 85, 86, 94,  
 95, 97–99, 102–104, 111–113, 115,  
 116, 126, 128, 130, 131, 133,  
 136–140, 150–156, 160, 163, 164,  
 170, 171, 174  
 clstr\_direct, 10–16, 18, 19, 32, 34, 35,  
 38–42, 43, 44, 45, 48–50, 55, 57, 85,  
 86, 94, 95, 97–99, 102–104,  
 111–113, 115, 116, 126, 128, 130,

- 131, 133, 136–140, 150–156, 160, 163, 164, 170, 171, 174*
- clstr\_sq*s, *10–16, 18, 19, 32, 34, 35, 38–43, 44, 45, 48–50, 55, 57, 85, 86, 94, 95, 97–99, 102–104, 111–113, 115, 116, 126, 128, 130, 131, 133, 136–140, 150–156, 160, 163, 164, 170, 171, 174*
- clstr\_subtree*, *10–16, 18, 19, 32, 34, 35, 38–44, 44, 48–50, 55, 57, 85, 86, 94, 95, 97–99, 102–104, 111–113, 115, 116, 126, 128, 130, 131, 133, 136–140, 150–156, 160, 163, 164, 170, 171, 174*
- ClstrArc*-class, *33*
- ClstrArc*-method (*ClstrArc*-class), *33*
- clstrarc\_gen*, *10–16, 18, 19, 32, 34, 35, 38–45, 48–50, 55, 57, 85, 86, 94, 95, 97–99, 102–104, 111–113, 115, 116, 126, 128, 130, 131, 133, 136–140, 150–156, 160, 163, 164, 170, 171, 174*
- clstrarc\_join*, *10–16, 18, 19, 32, 34, 35, 38–45, 48–50, 55, 57, 85, 86, 94, 95, 97–99, 102–104, 111–113, 115, 116, 126, 128, 130, 131, 133, 136–140, 150–156, 160, 163, 164, 170, 171, 174*
- ClstrRec*-class, *36*
- ClstrRec*-method (*ClstrRec*-class), *36*
- clstrrec\_gen*, *10–16, 18, 19, 32, 34, 35, 37, 38–45, 48–50, 55, 57, 85, 86, 94, 95, 97–99, 102–104, 111–113, 115, 116, 126, 128, 130, 131, 133, 136–140, 150–156, 160, 163, 164, 170, 171, 174*
- clstrs\_calc*, *10–16, 18, 19, 32, 34, 35, 38, 38, 39–45, 48–50, 55, 57, 85, 86, 94, 95, 97–99, 102–104, 111–113, 115, 116, 126, 128, 130, 131, 133, 136–140, 150–156, 160, 163, 164, 170, 171, 174*
- clstrs\_join*, *10–16, 18, 19, 32, 34, 35, 38, 39, 40–45, 48–50, 55, 57, 85, 86, 94, 95, 97–99, 102–104, 111–113, 115, 116, 126, 128, 130, 131, 133, 136–140, 150–156, 160, 163, 164, 170, 171, 174*
- clstrs\_merge*, *10–16, 18, 19, 32, 34, 35, 38, 39, 40, 41–45, 48–50, 55, 57, 85, 86, 94, 95, 97–99, 102–104, 111–113, 115, 116, 126, 128, 130, 131, 133, 136–140, 150–156, 160, 163, 164, 170, 171, 174*
- clstrs\_renumber*, *10–16, 18, 19, 32, 34, 35, 38–40, 40, 41–45, 48–50, 55, 57, 85, 86, 94, 95, 97–99, 102–104, 111–113, 115, 116, 126, 128, 130, 131, 134, 136–140, 150–156, 160, 163, 164, 170, 171, 174*
- clstrs\_save*, *10–16, 18, 19, 32, 34, 35, 38–41, 41, 42–45, 48–50, 55, 57, 85, 86, 94, 95, 97–99, 102–104, 111–113, 115, 116, 126, 128, 130, 131, 134, 136–140, 150–156, 160, 163, 164, 170, 171, 174*
- clusters2\_run*, *34, 37, 45, 46, 102, 106, 120, 121, 125, 133, 135, 148, 159, 161, 162*
- clusters\_run*, *34, 37, 46, 46, 102, 106, 120, 121, 125, 133, 135, 148, 159, 161, 162*
- cmdln*, *10–16, 18, 19, 32, 34, 35, 38–45, 47, 49, 50, 55, 57, 85, 86, 94, 95, 97–99, 102–104, 111–113, 115, 116, 126, 128, 130, 131, 134, 136–140, 150–156, 160, 163, 164, 170, 171, 174*
- create\_progress\_bar*, *20, 22, 23, 25–27, 66–73, 77, 117, 118, 123, 124, 143, 144, 146, 175*
- cTrees*, *48, 169*
- cTrees*, *TreeMan*-method (*TreeMan*-class), *165*
- cTrees*, *TreeMen*-method (*TreeMen*-class), *168*
- cycads*, *49*
- descendants\_get*, *10–16, 18, 19, 32, 34, 35, 38–45, 48, 49, 50, 55, 57, 85, 86, 94, 95, 97–99, 102–104, 111–113, 115, 116, 126, 128, 130, 131, 134, 136–140, 150–156, 160, 163, 164, 170, 171, 174*
- download\_obj\_check*, *10–16, 18, 19, 32, 34, 35, 38–45, 48, 49, 50, 55, 57, 85, 86, 94, 95, 97–99, 102–104, 111–113,*

- 115, 116, 126, 128, 130, 131, 134, 136–140, 150–156, 160, 163, 164, 170, 171, 174*  
download\_run, 51  
dragonflies, 51  
drop\_by\_rank, 28, 29, 52, 54, 55, 79–84, 87–91, 109, 110, 119, 177  
drop\_clstrs, 28, 29, 52, 53, 55, 79–84, 87–91, 109, 110, 119, 177  
drop\_sqs, 28, 29, 52, 54, 54, 79–84, 87–91, 109, 110, 119, 177  
  
error, *10–16, 18, 19, 32, 34, 35, 38–45, 48–50, 55, 57, 85, 86, 94, 95, 97–99, 102–104, 111–113, 115, 116, 127, 128, 130, 131, 134, 136–140, 150–156, 160, 163, 164, 170, 171, 174*  
Extract (TreeMen-class), 168  
  
fastCheckTreeMan, 30, 56  
from (TreeMen-class), 168  
  
gb\_extract, *10–16, 18, 19, 32, 34, 35, 38–45, 48–50, 55, 56, 85, 86, 94, 95, 97–99, 102–104, 111–113, 115, 116, 127, 128, 130, 131, 134, 136–140, 150–156, 160, 163, 164, 170, 171, 174*  
get\_clstr\_slot, 28, 29, 52, 54, 55, 79, 80–84, 87–91, 109, 110, 119, 177  
get\_nsqs, 28, 29, 52, 54, 55, 79, 79, 81–84, 87–91, 109, 110, 119, 177  
get\_ntaxa, 28, 29, 52, 54, 55, 79, 80, 80, 81–84, 87–91, 109, 110, 119, 177  
get\_sq\_slot, 28, 29, 52, 54, 55, 79–81, 81, 82–84, 87–91, 109, 110, 119, 177  
get\_stage\_times, 28, 29, 52, 54, 55, 79–81, 82, 83, 84, 87–91, 109, 110, 119, 177  
get\_tx\_slot, 28, 29, 52, 54, 55, 79–83, 84, 87–91, 109, 110, 119, 177  
get\_txids, 28, 29, 52, 54, 55, 79–82, 83, 84, 87–91, 109, 110, 119, 177  
getAge, 57, 61, 114, 173  
getBiprts, 58  
getCnnctdNds, 27, 59, 78  
getDcsd, 59, 60, 87  
getLvng, 60, 60, 87  
getNdAge, 61, 66, 76, 77  
getNdKids, 61, 67  
getNdLng, 62, 66, 68, 147  
getNdPD, 63, 69  
getNdPrdst, 63, 70  
getNdPrids, 64, 65, 71  
getNdPtids, 64, 65, 71  
getNdsAge, 61, 65, 76, 77  
getNdsFrmTxnmys, 62, 66, 68, 129, 158  
getNdsKids, 62, 67  
getNdsLng, 62, 66, 67, 147  
getNdSlt, 68, 72  
getNdsPD, 63, 69  
getNdsPrdst, 64, 70  
getNdsPrids, 64, 65, 70, 71  
getNdsPtids, 64, 65, 71, 71  
getNdsSlt, 68, 72  
getNdsSstr, 73, 74  
getNdSstr, 73, 73  
getOtgrp, 74  
getPath, 75  
getPrnt, 61, 75, 78  
getSpnAge, 61, 66, 76, 77  
getSpnsAge, 61, 66, 76, 77  
getSubtree, 7, 76, 77, 122  
getUnqNds, 59, 78  
  
hierarchic\_download, *10–16, 18, 19, 32, 34, 35, 38–45, 48–50, 55, 57, 85, 86, 94, 95, 97–99, 102–104, 111–113, 115, 116, 127, 128, 130, 131, 134, 136–140, 150–156, 160, 163, 164, 170, 171, 174*  
  
info, *10–16, 18, 19, 32, 34, 35, 38–45, 48–50, 55, 57, 85, 86, 94, 95, 97–99, 102–104, 111–113, 115, 116, 127, 128, 130, 131, 134, 136–140, 150–156, 160, 163, 164, 170, 171, 174*  
is\_txid\_in\_clstr, 28, 29, 52, 54, 55, 79–84, 87, 88–91, 109, 110, 119, 177  
is\_txid\_in\_sq, 28, 29, 52, 54, 55, 79–84, 87, 88, 89–91, 109, 110, 119, 177  
isUltrmtrc, 60, 86  
  
list (TreeMen-class), 168  
list-to-TreeMen, 89  
list\_clstrrec\_slots, 28, 29, 52, 54, 55, 79–84, 87, 88, 89, 90, 91, 109, 110, 119, 177

- list\_ncbi\_ranks, 28, 29, 52, 54, 55, 79–84, 87–90, 90, 91, 109, 110, 119, 177
- list\_seqrec\_slots, 28, 29, 52, 54, 55, 79–84, 87–90, 90, 91, 109, 110, 119, 177
- list\_taxrec\_slots, 28, 29, 52, 54, 55, 79–84, 87–90, 91, 109, 110, 119, 177
- loadTreeMan, 91, 117, 118, 127, 175, 176
- mammals, 92
- mk\_txid\_in\_sq\_mtrx, 92, 157, 173
- multiPhylo (multiPhylo-class), 93
- multiPhylo-class, 93
- multiPhylo-to-TreeMen, 93
- ncbocache\_load, 10–16, 18, 19, 32, 34, 35, 38–45, 48–50, 55, 57, 85, 86, 94, 95, 97–99, 102–104, 111–113, 115, 116, 127, 128, 130, 131, 134, 136–140, 150–156, 160, 163, 164, 170, 171, 174
- ncbocache\_save, 10–16, 18, 19, 32, 34, 35, 38–45, 48–50, 55, 57, 85, 86, 94, 94, 97–99, 102–104, 111–113, 115, 116, 127, 128, 130, 131, 134, 136–140, 150–156, 160, 163, 164, 170, 171, 174
- Node-class, 95
- Node-method (Node-class), 95
- obj\_check, 10–16, 18, 19, 32, 34, 35, 38–45, 48–50, 55, 57, 85, 86, 94, 95, 96, 97–99, 102–104, 111–113, 115, 116, 127, 128, 130, 131, 134, 136–140, 150–156, 160, 163, 164, 170, 171, 174
- obj\_load, 10–16, 18, 19, 32, 34, 35, 38–45, 48–50, 55, 57, 85, 86, 94, 95, 97, 97, 98, 99, 102–104, 111–113, 115, 116, 127, 128, 130, 131, 134, 136–140, 150–156, 160, 163, 164, 170, 171, 174
- obj\_save, 10–19, 32, 34, 35, 38–45, 48–50, 55, 57, 85, 86, 94, 95, 97, 98, 99, 102–104, 111–113, 115, 116, 127, 128, 130, 131, 134, 136–140, 150–156, 160, 163, 164, 170, 171, 174
- of (TreeMen-class), 168
- outfmt\_get, 10–19, 32, 34, 35, 38–45, 48–50, 55, 57, 85, 86, 94, 95, 97, 98, 99, 102–104, 111–113, 115, 116, 127, 128, 130, 131, 134, 136–140, 150–156, 160, 163, 164, 170, 171, 174
- parameters, 99, 148
- parameters\_load, 10–19, 32, 34, 35, 38–45, 48–50, 55, 57, 85, 86, 94, 95, 97–99, 101, 103, 104, 111–113, 115, 116, 127, 128, 130, 131, 134, 136–140, 150–156, 160, 163, 164, 170, 171, 174
- parameters\_reset, 34, 37, 46, 102, 106, 120, 121, 125, 133, 135, 148, 159, 161, 162
- parameters\_setup, 10–19, 32, 34, 35, 38–45, 48–50, 55, 57, 85, 86, 94, 95, 97–99, 102, 103, 104, 111–113, 115, 116, 127, 128, 130, 131, 134, 136–140, 150–156, 160, 163, 164, 170, 171, 174
- parent\_get, 10–19, 32, 34, 35, 38–45, 48–50, 55, 57, 85, 86, 94, 95, 97–99, 102, 103, 104, 111–113, 115, 116, 127, 128, 130, 131, 134, 136–140, 150–156, 160, 163, 164, 170, 171, 174
- phylo (phylo-class), 104
- phylo-class, 104
- phylo-to-TreeMan, 105
- Phylota-class, 105
- Phylota-method (Phylota-class), 105
- pinTips, 107
- plants, 108
- plot\_phylota\_pa, 28, 29, 52, 54, 55, 79–84, 87–91, 108, 110, 119, 177
- plot\_phylota\_treemap, 28, 29, 52, 54, 55, 79–84, 87–91, 109, 109, 119, 177
- print, ClstrArc-method (ClstrArc-class), 33
- print, ClstrRec-method (ClstrRec-class), 36
- print, Node-method (Node-class), 95
- print, Phylota-method (Phylota-class), 105
- print, SeqArc-method (SeqArc-class), 131
- print, SeqRec-method (SeqRec-class), 134

- print,TaxDict-method (TaxDict-class),  
159
- print,TaxRec-method (TaxRec-class), 162
- print,TreeMan-method (TreeMan-class),  
165
- print,TreeMen-method (TreeMen-class),  
168
- progress\_init, 10–19, 32, 34, 35, 38–45,  
48–50, 55, 57, 85, 86, 94, 95, 97–99,  
102–104, 111, 112, 113, 115, 116,  
127, 128, 130, 131, 134, 136–140,  
150–156, 160, 163, 164, 170, 171,  
174
- progress\_read, 10–19, 32, 35, 38–45, 48, 50,  
55, 57, 85, 86, 94, 95, 97–99,  
102–104, 111, 111, 113, 115, 116,  
127, 128, 130, 131, 134, 136–140,  
150–156, 160, 163, 164, 170, 171,  
174
- progress\_reset, 10–19, 32, 35, 38–45, 48,  
50, 55, 57, 85, 86, 94, 95, 97–99,  
102–104, 111, 112, 112, 113, 115,  
116, 127, 128, 130, 131, 134,  
136–140, 150–156, 160, 163, 164,  
170, 171, 174
- progress\_save, 10–19, 32, 35, 38–45, 48, 50,  
55, 57, 85, 86, 94, 95, 97–99,  
102–104, 111–113, 113, 115, 116,  
127, 128, 130, 131, 134, 136–140,  
150–156, 160, 163, 164, 170, 171,  
174
- pstMnp, 114
- randTree, 17, 114, 117, 118, 167, 170, 172,  
175, 176
- rank\_get, 10–19, 32, 35, 38–45, 48, 50, 55,  
57, 85, 86, 94, 95, 97–99, 102–104,  
111–113, 115, 116, 127, 128, 130,  
131, 134, 136–140, 150–156, 160,  
164, 170, 171, 174
- rawseqrec\_breakdown, 10–19, 32, 35, 38–45,  
48, 50, 55, 57, 85, 86, 94, 95, 97–99,  
102–104, 111–113, 115, 116, 127,  
128, 130, 131, 134, 136–140,  
150–156, 160, 164, 170, 171, 174
- read\_phylota, 28, 29, 52, 54, 55, 79–84,  
87–91, 109, 110, 119, 177
- readTree, 92, 117, 118, 127, 175, 176
- readTrmn, 92, 117, 118, 127, 175, 176
- reset, 34, 37, 46, 102, 106, 119, 121, 125,  
133, 135, 148, 159, 161, 162
- restart, 34, 37, 46, 102, 106, 120, 120, 125,  
133, 135, 148, 159, 161, 162
- rmClade, 7, 121
- rmNdmtrx, 7, 122
- rmNodes, 123, 125
- rmOtherSlt, 123
- rmTips, 9, 107, 122, 123, 124
- run, 34, 37, 46, 102, 106, 120, 121, 125, 133,  
135, 148, 159, 161, 162
- safely\_connect, 10–19, 32, 35, 38–45, 48,  
50, 55, 57, 85, 86, 94, 95, 97–99,  
102–104, 111–113, 115, 116, 126,  
128, 130, 131, 134, 136–140,  
150–156, 160, 164, 170, 171, 174
- saveTreeMan, 92, 117, 118, 127, 175, 176
- search\_and\_cache, 10–19, 32, 35, 38–45, 48,  
50, 55, 57, 85, 86, 94, 95, 97–99,  
102–104, 111–113, 115, 116, 127,  
128, 130, 131, 134, 136–140,  
150–156, 160, 164, 170, 171, 174
- searchterm\_gen, 10–19, 32, 35, 38–45, 48,  
50, 55, 57, 85, 86, 94, 95, 97–99,  
102–104, 111–113, 115, 116, 127,  
128, 130, 131, 134, 136–140,  
150–156, 160, 164, 170, 171, 174
- searchTxnynms, 66, 129, 147, 158
- seeds\_blast, 10–19, 32, 35, 38–45, 48, 50,  
55, 57, 85, 86, 94, 95, 97–99,  
102–104, 111–113, 115, 116, 127,  
128, 130, 131, 134, 136–140,  
150–156, 161, 164, 170, 171, 174
- seq\_download, 10–19, 32, 35, 38–45, 48, 50,  
55, 57, 85, 86, 94, 95, 97–99,  
102–104, 111–113, 115, 116, 127,  
128, 130, 131, 134, 136–139, 140,  
150–156, 161, 164, 170, 171, 174
- SeqArc-class, 131
- SeqArc-method (SeqArc-class), 131
- seqarc\_gen, 10–19, 32, 35, 38–45, 48, 50, 56,  
57, 85, 86, 94, 95, 97–99, 102–104,  
111–113, 115, 116, 127, 128, 130,  
131, 133, 136–140, 150–156, 161,  
164, 170, 171, 174
- SeqRec-class, 134
- SeqRec-method (SeqRec-class), 134



- seqrec\_augment, *10–19, 32, 35, 38–45, 48, 50, 56, 57, 85, 86, 94, 95, 97–99, 102–104, 111–113, 115, 116, 127, 128, 130, 131, 134, 136, 137–140, 150–156, 161, 164, 170, 171, 174*  
 seqrec\_convert, *10–19, 32, 35, 38–45, 48, 50, 56, 57, 85, 86, 94, 95, 97–99, 102–104, 111–113, 115, 116, 127, 128, 130, 131, 134, 136, 137, 138–140, 150–156, 161, 164, 170, 171, 174*  
 seqrec\_gen, *10–19, 32, 35, 38–45, 48, 50, 56, 57, 85, 86, 94, 95, 97–99, 102–104, 111–113, 115, 116, 127, 128, 130, 131, 134, 136, 137, 137, 139, 140, 150–156, 161, 164, 170, 171, 174*  
 seqrec\_get, *10–19, 32, 35, 38–45, 48, 50, 56, 57, 85, 86, 94, 95, 97–99, 102–104, 111–113, 115, 116, 127, 128, 130, 131, 134, 136–138, 139, 140, 150–156, 161, 164, 170, 171, 174*  
 setAge, *141, 147*  
 setNdID, *141, 143*  
 setNdOther, *124, 142, 144*  
 setNdsID, *142, 143*  
 setNdsOther, *124, 143, 144*  
 setNdSpn, *145, 146*  
 setNdsSpn, *145, 145*  
 setPD, *141, 146*  
 setTxnynms, *66, 129, 147, 158*  
 setup, *34, 37, 46, 102, 106, 120, 121, 125, 133, 135, 148, 159, 161, 162*  
 show, ClstrArc-method (ClstrArc-class), *33*  
 show, ClstrRec-method (ClstrRec-class), *36*  
 show, Node-method (Node-class), *95*  
 show, Phylota-method (Phylota-class), *105*  
 show, SeqArc-method (SeqArc-class), *131*  
 show, SeqRec-method (SeqRec-class), *134*  
 show, TaxDict-method (TaxDict-class), *159*  
 show, TaxRec-method (TaxRec-class), *162*  
 show, TreeMan-method (TreeMan-class), *165*  
 show, TreeMen-method (TreeMen-class), *168*  
 sids\_check, *10–19, 32, 35, 38–45, 48, 50, 56, 57, 85, 86, 94, 95, 97–99, 102–104, 111–113, 115, 116, 127, 128, 130, 131, 134, 136, 137, 139, 140, 149, 151–156, 161, 164, 170, 171, 174*  
 sids\_get, *10–19, 32, 35, 38–45, 48, 50, 56, 57, 85, 86, 94, 95, 97–99, 102–104, 111–113, 115, 116, 127, 128, 130, 131, 134, 136, 137, 139, 140, 150, 150, 152–156, 161, 164, 170, 171, 174*  
 sids\_load, *10–19, 32, 35, 38–45, 48, 50, 56, 57, 85, 86, 94, 95, 97–99, 102–104, 111–113, 115, 116, 127, 128, 130, 131, 134, 136, 137, 139, 140, 150, 151, 151, 152–156, 161, 164, 170, 171, 174*  
 sids\_save, *10–19, 32, 35, 38–45, 48, 50, 56, 57, 85, 86, 94, 95, 97–99, 102–104, 111–113, 115, 116, 127, 128, 130, 131, 134, 136, 137, 139, 140, 150–152, 152, 153–156, 161, 164, 170, 171, 174*  
 slots (TreeMen-class), *168*  
 sqs\_count, *10–19, 32, 35, 38–45, 48, 50, 56, 57, 85, 86, 94, 95, 97–99, 102–104, 111–113, 115, 116, 127, 128, 130, 131, 134, 136, 137, 139, 140, 150–152, 153, 154–156, 161, 164, 170, 171, 174*  
 sqs\_save, *10–19, 32, 35, 38–45, 48, 50, 56, 57, 85, 86, 94, 95, 97–99, 102–104, 111–113, 115, 116, 127, 128, 130, 131, 134, 136, 137, 139, 140, 150–153, 154, 155, 156, 161, 164, 170, 171, 174*  
 stage\_args\_check, *10–19, 32, 35, 38–45, 48, 50, 56, 57, 85, 86, 94, 95, 97–99, 102–104, 111–113, 115, 116, 127, 128, 130, 131, 134, 136, 137, 139, 140, 150–155, 155, 161, 164, 170, 171, 174*  
 stages\_run, *10–19, 32, 35, 38–45, 48, 50, 56, 57, 85, 86, 94, 95, 97–99, 102–104, 111–113, 115, 116, 127, 128, 130, 131, 134, 136, 137, 139, 140, 150–154, 155, 156, 161, 164, 170, 171, 174*  
 str, ClstrArc-method (ClstrArc-class), *33*  
 str, ClstrRec-method (ClstrRec-class), *36*  
 str, Phylota-method (Phylota-class), *105*  
 str, SeqArc-method (SeqArc-class), *131*

- str, SeqRec-method (SeqRec-class), 134  
 str, TaxDict-method (TaxDict-class), 159  
 str, TaxRec-method (TaxRec-class), 162  
 str, TreeMan-method (TreeMan-class), 165  
 str, TreeMen-method (TreeMen-class), 168  
 sturgeons, 156  
 summary, ClstrArc-method (ClstrArc-class), 33  
 summary, ClstrRec-method (ClstrRec-class), 36  
 summary, Node-method (Node-class), 95  
 summary, Phylota-method (Phylota-class), 105  
 summary, SeqArc-method (SeqArc-class), 131  
 summary, SeqRec-method (SeqRec-class), 134  
 summary, TaxDict-method (TaxDict-class), 159  
 summary, TaxRec-method (TaxRec-class), 162  
 summary, TreeMan-method (TreeMan-class), 165  
 summary, TreeMen-method (TreeMen-class), 168  
 summary\_phylota, 93, 157, 173  
 tardigrades, 157  
 tax\_download, 10–19, 32, 35, 38–45, 48, 50, 56, 57, 85, 86, 94, 95, 97–99, 102–104, 111–113, 115, 116, 127, 128, 130, 131, 134, 136, 137, 139, 140, 150–156, 161, 164, 164, 170, 171, 174  
 taxaResolve, 66, 129, 147, 158  
 TaxDict-class, 159  
 TaxDict-method (TaxDict-class), 159  
 taxdict\_gen, 10–19, 32, 35, 38–45, 48, 50, 56, 57, 85, 86, 94, 95, 97–99, 102–104, 111–113, 115, 116, 127, 128, 130, 131, 134, 136, 137, 139, 140, 150–156, 160, 164, 170, 171, 174  
 taxise\_run, 34, 37, 46, 102, 106, 120, 121, 125, 133, 135, 148, 159, 161, 162  
 TaxRec-class, 162  
 TaxRec-method (TaxRec-class), 162  
 taxtree\_gen, 10–19, 32, 35, 38–45, 48, 50, 56, 57, 85, 86, 94, 95, 97–99, 102–104, 111–113, 115, 116, 127, 128, 130, 131, 134, 136, 137, 139, 140, 150–156, 161, 163, 164, 170, 171, 174  
 tinamous, 165  
 TreeMan-class, 165  
 TreeMan-method (TreeMan-class), 165  
 TreeMan-to-phylo, 167  
 TreeMen-class, 168  
 TreeMen-method (TreeMen-class), 168  
 TreeMen-to-multiPhylo, 169  
 trees (TreeMen-class), 168  
 twoer, 169  
 txids\_get, 10–19, 32, 35, 38–45, 48, 50, 56, 57, 85, 86, 94, 95, 97–99, 102–104, 111–113, 115, 116, 127, 128, 130, 131, 134, 136, 137, 139, 140, 150–156, 161, 164, 170, 171, 174  
 txnds\_count, 10–19, 32, 35, 38–45, 48, 50, 56, 57, 85, 86, 94, 95, 97–99, 102–104, 111–113, 115, 116, 127, 128, 130, 131, 134, 136, 137, 139, 140, 150–156, 161, 164, 170, 171, 174  
 ultrTree, 171  
 unblncdTree, 17, 115, 172  
 update\_phylota, 93, 157, 173  
 updateSlts, 7, 57, 114, 142, 173  
 warn, 10–19, 32, 35, 38–45, 48, 50, 56, 57, 85, 86, 94, 95, 97–99, 102–104, 111–113, 115, 116, 127, 128, 130, 131, 134, 136, 137, 139, 140, 150–156, 161, 164, 170, 171, 174  
 write\_sqs, 28, 29, 52, 54, 55, 79–84, 87–91, 109, 110, 119, 176  
 writeTree, 92, 117, 118, 127, 174, 176  
 writeTrmn, 92, 117, 118, 127, 175, 176  
 yeasts, 177